Contents

Introduction .......................................................... page 8

Units

1  am, is, are (to be) .................................................. 12
   I'm from Brazil.
2  to be (negative) a/an + occupation .......................... 14
   She isn't a nurse.
3  to be (questions) .................................................. 16
   Are you eighteen?
4  am, is, are + adjective a/an or no article ................. 18
   They're expensive cars.
5  Review of units 1 to 4 Pronunciation: contractions .... 20
6  Where is/are ...? Prepositions of place (in, on, next to, under) 22
   Where are the car keys? They're on the table.
7  There is/are ... Prepositions of place (in the corner, in the middle, in front of, behind) 24
   There's a table in the corner of the room.
8  Is there ...? Prepositions of place (opposite, in front of, between, behind) 26
   Is there a cash machine near here? Yes, it's opposite the cinema.
9  There is/are + some/any Countable and uncountable nouns 28
   There's some milk in the fridge.
10 Review of units 6 to 9 Pronunciation: is/are .............. 30
11 have got ................................................................. 32
   She's got dark hair.
12 Possessive adjectives .............................................. 34
   Have you got your passport?
13 this, that, these, those (demonstrative pronouns) The pronoun one 36
   Is this your coat?
14 Possessive 's and possessive pronouns whose .............. 38
   It isn't Karen's mobile. It's mine.
15 Review of units 11 to 14 Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/ ....... 40
16 Present simple 1 Conjunctions: and / but .................... 42
   He works in a hospital and he lives in London.
17 Present simple 2 Subject and object pronouns .............. 44
   I don't like them.
18 Adverbs of frequency ............................................. 46
   I never go to the opera.
19 Wh- questions ....................................................... 48
   Where do tigers live?
20 Review of units 16 to 19 Pronunciation: /s/, /z/ or /iz/ .. 50
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>can (ability) Adverbs of manner</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I can play the piano.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>can (offers and requests)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can I help you? / Can you help me?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>would like + noun (requests and offers)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We'd like a table for two.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn left at the traffic lights. / Print this map.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Review of units 21 to 24 Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of can</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Comparatives</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My brother is older than me.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Superlatives</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The blue whale is the loudest animal in the world.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They play beautifully.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Comparative adverbs</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Review of units 26 to 29 Pronunciation: sentence stress</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Present continuous</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They're playing chess.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Present simple and present continuous State verbs</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I usually walk to work but today I'm taking a bus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Present continuous (for future arrangements)</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We're playing tennis on Saturday afternoon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>going to</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'm going to travel around the USA in August.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Review of units 31 to 34 Pronunciation: contractions</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I wasn't at home on Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>There was/were</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When I was a child, there was a park and a river here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>could (past ability)</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When he was at school he couldn't read very well.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Could ...? and Would you like ...? (polite requests and offers)</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Could you spell that? / Would you like to leave a message?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Review of units 36 to 39 Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of was</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Past simple (regular verbs)</td>
<td>I studied medicine for six years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Past simple (irregular verbs)</td>
<td>We went to the beach on Saturday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>did/didn't (negative and questions)</td>
<td>They didn't get married. / Did you go to university?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Past simple questions Object and subject questions</td>
<td>Where did you study? / Who organised your accommodation?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Review of units 41 to 44 Pronunciation: syllables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>must/mustn't</td>
<td>You must be home by ten-thirty. / You mustn't be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>have to, have got to, don't have to, must and mustn't</td>
<td>You have to wash your hands. / You don't have to wear a uniform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>should/shouldn't</td>
<td>You should buy the red dress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>had to / didn't have to (past obligation)</td>
<td>I had to study for a Maths exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Review of units 46 to 49 Pronunciation: n't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>Have you cleaned the car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Present perfect with just, already and yet</td>
<td>She's just passed her driving test. / I've already tidied my room. / Have you talked to Mark yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Present perfect with for and since How long ...?</td>
<td>I've had this business for two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Have you ever ...? been and gone</td>
<td>Have you ever been to the USA?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Review of units 51 to 54 Pronunciation: have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Past continuous</td>
<td>Children were going to school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Past simple and past continuous while, when and suddenly</td>
<td>I was waiting at the train station when I saw my brother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Conjunctions and, or, but, before, after, while, when, because and so</td>
<td>After we reached Barcelona, we took a boat to Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>used to</td>
<td>I used to have long hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Review of units 56 to 59 Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td><em>all, most, some, none</em></td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Most of the students are European.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td><em>any-, every-, no-, some- / -thing, -where, -one, -body</em></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did anyone call for me while I was at lunch?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td><em>both, neither and either</em></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neither of them is happy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td><em>much, many and a lot</em></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Countable and uncountable nouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td><em>Review of units 61 to 64</em></td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation: of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td><em>a/an (indefinite article)</em></td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'm going to be a pop star.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td><em>the (definite article)</em></td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The sun is at the centre of our solar system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td><em>a/an and the</em></td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can I borrow a pen? / The next football match is on the 25th.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td><em>No article</em></td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peruvians are friendly people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td><em>Review of units 66 to 69</em></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation: <em>the</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td><em>will (for future and predictions)</em></td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There will be cities on the moon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td><em>will (for offers, promises and requests)</em></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'll be there in twenty minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td><em>will and going to (for decisions)</em></td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are you going to have? I'm not sure. I think I'll have the fish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td><em>going to, will and the present continuous</em></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td><em>Review of units 71 to 74</em></td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation: <em>'ll</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td><em>Prepositions of time (in, on, at)</em></td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They're coming on Friday at 8.30 p.m.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td><em>Prepositions of place</em></td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bar is at the top of the stairs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td><em>Relative clauses 1 (who, which, that)</em></td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I like films which make me laugh.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td><em>Relative clauses 2</em></td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the woman (who) Jack was talking about.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td><em>Review of units 76 to 79</em></td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation: sentence stress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If a mosquito bites you, it’s usually a female.

If you hear the fire alarm, leave the building.

If we go this way, we’ll get to the campsite.

If the bus is late, you should take a taxi.

When present simple, present simple

If unless + present simple, imperative

If + present simple, modal verb

Review of units 81 to 84 Pronunciation: intonation

-ed and -ing adjectives

I was surprised. / We have 1,000 exciting new jobs.

looks, sounds, tastes, smells and feels Sense verb + adjective

She looks young. / This tastes delicious.

Order of adjectives
two small, old, English oil paintings

Adjectives with prepositions
I’m good at snowboarding.

Review of units 86 to 89 Pronunciation: syllables and word stress

Verb + to-infinitive

I’ve decided to leave my job.

Verb + -ing / -ing nouns

I don’t like driving at night. / Driving at night is dangerous.

Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive?

I’d like to help old people and children.

stop + -ing or stop + to-infinitive?

She’s stopped feeling sick. / We’ve just stopped to have something to eat.

Review of units 91 to 94 Pronunciation: intrusive /w/

Verb + object + to-infinitive

Tell Jim to photocopy this report.

Infinitive of purpose

I’m going to Florida to meet some friends.

The passive: present simple

Tea is served by the host.

The passive: past simple The agent by

Cacao beans were used as a form of money.

Review of units 96 to 99 Pronunciation: past participles

Progress tests

Appendices 1 Punctuation 2 Spelling rules 3 Irregular verbs 4 Summary of main verb forms

Index
Welcome to Practical Grammar Level 1. This is the first in a series of grammar books for students of English. Level 1 introduces grammar to students at beginner to pre-intermediate level. It aims to:

- teach all the key grammar at elementary level.
- improve accuracy with grammar.
- help students use grammar in real-life situations, including conversations.

Organisation of the book
Practical Grammar Level 1 has 100 units, organised into blocks of five units. Each block is made up of four main units about an area of grammar and a fifth review unit. After every ten units, there is a progress test at the back of the book to check understanding. You’ll also find extra useful information in the appendices (pages 232–237) and an index (pages 266–270) for quick reference. A key feature of the book is the CDs which you can use to listen to the conversations in the book and improve your pronunciation of grammar items.

Using Practical Grammar Level 1
Practical Grammar Level 1 is ideal for use as self study or in the classroom with a teacher. We present basic elementary grammar in the early units and then increase the difficulty in later units. Most students can begin at unit 1 and work through the rest of the units in order. Other students who are already familiar with some English grammar can choose different units and work on a specific area of grammar. (Use the contents or the index to do this.) If you want to use Practical Grammar Level 1 as a supplementary study book with your classroom course, you can also select particular units to match the lessons.

Grammar in real contexts
The rules of grammar are important but it’s also important to see the grammar being used in a real-life situation. For this reason, each unit introduces the grammar through a short conversation or text. After the presentation of the grammar, there are exercises that practise the new language in authentic contexts with recordings on the CDs to hear the language in use.

Study at home (to the student)
This book helps you understand the basic grammar of English. Here are some ideas for using Practical Grammar Level 1:

- Study the grammar regularly. For example, do one unit every day. Read the introductory conversation or text and study the presentation of the grammar. Then complete the exercises and listen to the CDs.
- Complete the review unit and check you understand the grammar with the progress tests (pages 212–231).
- Study with a friend. Do the units together and read some of the conversations aloud.
- Repeat some of the units. If you find some of the grammar in a unit especially difficult, it’s a good idea to repeat the unit.
Remember that grammar isn't the only part of English. If you find new words in *Practical Grammar* Level 1, check them in your dictionary and write them down.

Use the online component *MyPG*. The activities allow you to continue working with all the grammar in new contexts. There is a gradebook where you can build up a picture of your progress.

---

**In the classroom (to the teacher)**

Students can use *Practical Grammar* Level 1 for self study but you can also use it in class. It is aimed at students at beginner level, from elementary to pre-intermediate level.

If you are using a course book, *Practical Grammar* Level 1 will be a useful supplementary grammar book. The grammar becomes progressively harder over the 100 units and it reflects the order of the grammar often taught on courses.

Ask students to read the conversation or text at the beginning of the unit. If there is a conversation, you could ask two students to read it aloud to the class. Then read through the presentation of the grammar and deal with any questions the students might have.

As students work though the exercises, monitor their progress and help out with any questions they have. Students could also work in pairs or small groups for some exercises and compare their answers. In some units, the final exercise asks students to personalise the grammar and write their own sentences. Afterwards, ask some students to read theirs aloud or to compare with a partner.

If you have done the first four units of a section in class, you could set the review unit for homework. However, the review unit also includes help with pronunciation, vocabulary and listening linked to the grammar so sometimes you might want to work on these as a class.

The progress tests (pages 212–231) check students' progress after every ten units. You can use these in class to monitor how much students have learnt. If students have particular difficulties with certain parts of the test, you will be able to see if they need to work on any of the units again. Also note that for further practice you can use the online component *MyPG*. This component has a Content Management System, which allows you to set specific exercises to be completed in a set time. When students 'submit' the exercises, their scores appear in the gradebook allowing you to see how each student is progressing.

There are two CDs at the back of the book. They contain all the listening and pronunciation activities. Use them to help students hear the grammar in use and also for revision of the forms.
Overview of *Practical Grammar* Level 1

**The units**

Every unit is made up of two pages and has a similar format so it's easy to follow.

**Title**

The title tells you the main grammar area. Some units also have subtitles to give extra information.

**Context**

*Practical Grammar* teaches you how to use grammar in real situations. Each unit starts with a conversation or a short text to show the grammar in context. Read this first.

**Presentation**

The presentation explains the rules of the grammar and has information on the form, meaning and use of the grammar with example sentences. Use the presentation to help you complete the exercises.

**Key vocabulary**

When you use grammar, you also need words. Some units give you extra information about useful vocabulary in the unit.

**Review units**

At the end of every block of four units, there is a review unit.

**Grammar**

This section gives extra practice of all the grammar in the four units. It's also a good way to check progress.

**Pronunciation**

It's important to know the rules of grammar but you also need to be able to say the grammatical forms correctly. *Practical Grammar* includes a pronunciation practice section with recordings.

**Vocabulary**

*Practical Grammar* teaches you the rules of grammar but it also contains lots of useful vocabulary in the units. The review units have exercises to help you remember the new words.

**Listen again**

A key feature of *Practical Grammar* is the listening practice. Listening is a great way to learn a new language. Here you listen again to one of the recordings from the four units and become more confident with the grammar in context.
Exercises

Every unit gives lots of practice with the grammar. Always start with exercise 1 because it helps with learning the form of the grammar. Later exercises help you to understand its meaning.

Listening

A really useful feature in *Practical Grammar* is the recordings. Most units include a listening activity so you can listen to the completed exercise and hear the grammar in a real situation.

Tip

This gives you extra information about the grammar in real situations.

Progress tests

After every ten units, there is a progress test (see pages 212–231).

Appendices

These have more useful information on spelling and punctuation. There are also summaries of the key grammar areas, including verb forms (see pages 232–237).

Index

Use the index to find items of grammar quickly and help with terminology (see pages 266–270).

*My PG*

This online component provides extra practice of all the language covered in the book through a wide range of exercise types.
Hello. I'm Ernesto. I'm from Brazil. I'm twenty-three and I'm single.

Presentation

Affirmative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He, She</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>He's, She's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You, We</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>You're, We're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td>They're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

from Brazil. eighteen. married.

You're married.

TIP Use I'm, he's, you're for speaking.

Key vocabulary Personal details: married, single (= not married)

Exercises

1 Match the sentences in the box to the pictures.

a She's twenty-five.  b He's fifty.  c She's two.  d They're sixteen.  e He's twelve.
2 Write sentences with the words in the box.
- Brazil  Egypt  Italy  Japan  Russia  the USA

1 I'm from Brazil.

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions.
1. are from Spain they
2. are married we
3. am I from Russia
4. is single he
5. are twenty-one you
6. am I single
7. are from Japan they
8. is from she the UK
9. are from Poland we
10. are China from you

4 1.02 Write sentences. Then listen and check.
1. Andrea / Poland / 21 + single
   Hi. I'm Andrea. I'm from Poland. I'm twenty-one and I'm single.
2. Bruno / Germany / 32 + married

5 Complete sentences 1–4 for you and write sentences 5–8 for a friend. Use He and She.
1. I'm _________________. (name)
2. I'm from _________________. (country)
3. I'm _________________. (age)
4. I'm _________________. (married or single)
5. _________________. (name)
6. _________________. (country)
7. _________________. (age)
8. _________________. (married or single)
2 to be (negative)

a/an + occupation

Presentation

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am not</th>
<th>Mexican.</th>
<th>He isn't Mexican.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>from Mexico.</td>
<td>isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you/we</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>thirty-five.</td>
<td>You aren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>married.</td>
<td>We aren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They aren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'm not Mexican. She isn't thirty-five. You aren't married.

TIP  These negative forms are also possible: he's not, we're not ...

a/an + occupation

Use a/an (indefinite article) with a person's occupation.

- Use a before words that start with a consonant sound: a doctor, a teacher ...
- Use an before words that start with a vowel sound: an artist, an engineer ...
- Don’t use a/an with plurals. Say doctors (don’t say n doctors).

TIP  Most plurals are formed by adding -s to the singular: doctors, teachers, artists, engineers ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

Key vocabulary  Occupations: artist, doctor, engineer, musician, nurse, student, teacher
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with a, an or Ø (no article).

1 She’s ________ doctor.
2 He’s ________ artist.
3 They’re ________ engineers.
4 I’m ________ teacher.
5 We’re ________ doctors.
6 You’re ________ musician.
7 She isn’t ________ artist.
8 I’m not ________ student.
9 You aren’t ________ teacher.
10 He isn’t ________ engineer.
11 They aren’t ________ nurses.
12 You aren’t ________ artist.

2 Write negative sentences.

1 She’s a doctor, not a nurse. [She isn’t a nurse.]
2 I’m a student, not a teacher. [I’m not a student.]
3 You’re an engineer, not an artist. [You aren’t an artist.]
4 They’re Polish, not Russian. [They aren’t Polish.]
5 We’re musicians, not engineers. [We aren’t engineers.]
6 She’s Japanese, not Chinese. [She isn’t Chinese.]
7 He’s single, not married. [He isn’t married.]
8 I’m twenty, not twenty-one. [I’m not twenty-one.]
9 She’s an artist, not a musician. [She isn’t a musician.]
10 They’re from Brazil, not Peru. [They aren’t from Peru.]
11 We’re teachers, not students. [We aren’t students.]
12 She’s twenty-eight, not twenty-nine. [She isn’t twenty-nine.]

3 Correct the sentences. Use the words in the box.

Australia  France  India  Peru  the USA

1 The Taj Mahal is in Pakistan.
   The Taj Mahal isn’t in Pakistan. It’s in India.

2 The Statue of Liberty is in Canada.

3 Machu Picchu is in Mexico.

4 The Eiffel Tower is in Italy.

5 The Sydney Opera House is in the UK.
3 **to be** (questions)

**Presentation**

**Yes/No questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Am</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>Is</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>is, it, it's, it isn't, isn't it, isn't he, isn't she, isn't it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you, we, they</td>
<td>are, are they, are they, are you, are we, are they, are he, are she, are it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am, is, is he, is she, is it, am not, isn't, aren't, aren't you, aren't we, aren't they, aren't he, aren't she, isn't it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is, isn't, isn't he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is, isn't, isn't she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is, isn't, isn't it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are, aren't, aren't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are, aren't, aren't we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are, aren't, aren't they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Say Yes, I am. Yes, he is ... (don't say Yes, I'm. Yes, he's.)**

**Key vocabulary**

**Telling the time:**

- It's one o'clock.
- It's quarter past two.
- It's half past three.
- It's quarter to four.
- It's five past five.
- It's ten to six.

**TIP** it's = it is
Exercises

1 Complete the questions with Is or Are.

1 _______ Are you a doctor?
2 _______ he twenty-five?
3 _______ they Brazilian?
4 _______ it two o'clock?
5 _______ he from New York?

6 _______ Tom and Anna married?
7 _______ he Italian?
8 _______ they from France?
9 _______ Jack and Suzy teachers?
10 _______ it half past four?

2 Complete the short answers.

1 Is it eight o'clock?
   No, it isn't.
2 Are you British?
   Yes,
3 Is she married?
   No,
4 Are you eighteen?
   No,
5 Are you and Rosaria Italian?
   Yes,

6 Is she from Canada?
   Yes,
7 Are they students?
   No,
8 Is it quarter to nine?
   Yes,
9 Are they married?
   Yes,
10 Is he thirty-four?
   No,

3 Answer for you with short answers.

1 Are you a student? __________________________
2 Are you single? __________________________
3 Are you twenty-five? ______________________

4 Are you American? _________________________
5 Is it six o'clock? __________________________
6 Are you Polish? __________________________

4 1.03 Write the conversations. Then listen and check.

1 you + Italian? → no: Spanish.
   A: Are you Italian?
   B: No, I'm not. I'm Spanish.

2 he + Japanese? → yes
   A: Is he Japanese?
   B: Yes, he is.

3 she + Brazilian? → yes
   A:
   B:

4 he + Polish? → no: Russian
   A:
   B:

5 they + doctors? → no: teachers
   A:
   B:

6 they + married? → yes
   A:
   B:

7 you and Jack + American? → no: British
   A:
   B:

8 it + six o'clock? → no: half past five
   A:
   B:

9 she + single? → no: married
   A:
   B:

10 he + musician? → no: engineer
   A:
   B:
4 *am, is, are + adjective*
*a/an or no article*

**Presentation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm</td>
<td>We're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're</td>
<td>You're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's</td>
<td>They're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's</td>
<td>They're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an expensive car</td>
<td>expensive cars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a/an or no article*

Use *a/an* (indefinite article) with adjective + singular noun: *It's an expensive car.*

Don't use *a/an* with plural nouns: *They're expensive cars.*

**TIP** Say *an expensive car, a young student* ... (don't say *a car expensive, a student young* ...)

Say *expensive cars, young students* ... (don't say *expensives cars, youngs students* ...)

**Key vocabulary** Adjectives: angry, beautiful, thirsty, hungry, tired, cheap/expensive, slow/fast, happy/unhappy, cold/hot, poor/rich, short/tall, small/big, old/young

**Exercises**

1. Write affirmative sentences.
   
   1. Charles isn't tall.  
   2. Elizabeth isn't young.  
   3. The USA isn't small.  
   5. David and Victoria aren't poor.  
   6. iPods aren't big.  
   7. I'm not old.  
   8. We aren't rich.  

   "He's short."
2 Complete the sentences with a, an or 0 (no article). Then listen and check.

1. It's ______ cheap car.
2. They're ______ fast cars.
3. She's ______ young teacher.
4. He's ______ rich.
5. It's ______ beautiful.

7. We're ______ poor students.
8. I'm ______ poor student.
9. They're ______ Italian teachers.
10. It's ______ expensive house.
11. She's ______ young engineer.
12. You're ______ American.

3 Write sentences. Use the adjectives in the box.

- cold
- hot
- hungry
- thirsty
- tired

1. I'm hungry.
2. ______
3. ______
4. ______
5. ______

4 Correct the sentences.

2. Sue's angry.
3. Lee's unhappy.
5 Review of units 1 to 4

Grammar

1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pronouns</th>
<th>verbs</th>
<th>articles</th>
<th>adjectives</th>
<th>nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>book(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>'re</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>car(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>house(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>slow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Is it a question or a statement? Add a question mark (?) or a full stop (.)

1 Is she English?  Is she English? Are you a doctor
2 I'm a teacher.  I'm a teacher. Are you a teacher.
3 Is it six o'clock? Is it six o'clock? We're Russian.
4 They aren't nurses. They aren't nurses. Are they expensive?

3 Combine the sentences.

1 He's from Russia. He's a doctor. He's a Russian doctor.
2 She's from Britain. She's a teacher.
3 We're engineers. We're from Spain.
4 I'm a musician. I'm from Italy.
5 They're from Japan. They're students.
6 She's an engineer. She's from Poland.
7 He's an artist. He's from Brazil.
8 They're from the USA. They're nurses.

4 Write questions and answers.

1 Madonna – from the USA? → yes
   Is Madonna from the USA?
   Yes, she is.
2 Tom Cruise – tall? → no
3 Bill Gates – rich? → yes
4 Julia Roberts – a musician? → no
5 the Rolling Stones - American? → no
6 Ferraris - expensive? → yes

5 Write negative sentences. Use contractions.
1 Tom Cruise - tall
   Tom Cruise isn’t tall.
2 Bill Gates - poor
3 The Rolling Stones - American
4 Madonna - from Italy
5 Ferraris - cheap
6 Julia Roberts - a musician

Pronunciation: contractions
6 1.05 Listen and tick what you hear.
1 He is not → He isn’t ✔
2 I am
3 She is
4 They are
5 We are not
6 It is not
7 You are

Vocabulary
7 Match to make six occupations.
1 art  → artist
2 doct  → doctor
3 engin  → engineer
4 music  → musician
5 teach  → teacher
6 stud  → student

8 Write the times.
1 It’s quarter to eight.
2
3
4
5
6

9 Write the opposite adjectives.
1 tall  → short
2 rich  → poor
3 old  → young
4 big  → small
5 fast  → slow
6 expensive  → cheap
7 married  → single
8 hot  → cold

Listen again
10 1.06 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?
1 Andrea is Polish. ✔
2 Andrea is married. 
3 Bruno is thirty. 
4 Bruno is married. 
5 Marisol is Mexican. 
6 Marisol is nineteen.
6 Where is/are ...?
Prepositions of place (in, on, next to, under)

Presentation

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is it on the chair?</th>
<th>Are they on the table?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Where questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where is the phone?</th>
<th>Where are the car keys?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Affirmative + preposition

| It’s on the chair. | They’re on the table. |

| Use the definite article with both singular and plural nouns: the phone, the keys. |

Prepositions of place

- in
- on
- next to
- under

Key vocabulary

Everyday objects: bag, book, camera, chair, keys, phone, pen, table, wallet

Exercises

1 Read the answers and look at the picture. Write the questions. Use Where’s the ...? or Where are the ...?

1 Where’s the phone?
2 ___________________________  It’s on the table.
3 ___________________________  It’s next to the chair.
4 ___________________________  They’re under the chair.
5 ___________________________  It’s next to the phone.
6 ___________________________  They’re on the chair.
7 ___________________________  It’s under the chair.
8 ___________________________  It’s under the table.
9 ___________________________  They’re in the bag.
2 Look at the picture in exercise 1 again. Correct the prepositions in the sentences. 
Two are correct.
1 Two pens are in the chair. 
2 The keys and the wallet are under the chair. 
3 The books are under the bag. 
4 The bag is next to the table. 
5 The camera is next to the phone. 
6 The phone is under the table. 

3 Complete the sentences. Use It's or They're and in, on, next to or under. Then listen and check.

1 It's under the chair. 
2 They're in the bag. 
3 the book. 
4 the camera. 
5 the table. 
6 the bag. 
7 the chair. 
8 the wallet. 
9 the phone. 
10 the bag.
My new apartment

There are four rooms in the apartment. There's a living room, a kitchen, a bedroom and a bathroom.

There's a big window in the living room. There are two sofas. There's a table in the middle of the room and there's a television in the corner.

The bedroom is small. There's a bed, a desk and a chair. The desk is next to the bed and in front of the window.

There's no window in the bathroom and there's no bath. There's a shower.

Presentation

Affirmative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There's</th>
<th>one sofa.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There are</td>
<td>two sofas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** there's = there + is

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There isn't</th>
<th>a sofa.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There aren't</td>
<td>two sofas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** there isn't = there is not
there aren't = there are not
There's no sofa. = There isn't a sofa.

**Key vocabulary** Rooms and furniture: living room, kitchen, bedroom, bathroom, bath, bed, chair, desk, door, shower, sofa, table, television, window
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with There’s or There are.
1 There’s __________ a table in the kitchen.
2 __________ four chairs in the corner.
3 __________ no television in the bedroom.
4 __________ a table next to the sofa.
5 __________ a sofa between the windows.
6 __________ two bathrooms.

2 Match the sentences to the apartments.
1 The bedroom’s big. B
2 The bedroom’s small. □
3 The chair’s behind the door in the bathroom. □
4 The television’s in front of the sofa. □
5 There are four chairs and a table in the middle of room. □
6 There are three windows in the living room. □
7 There’s a bath and there’s a shower. □
8 There’s a chair next to the bed. □
9 There’s a big bed in the middle of the room. □
10 There’s a big sofa. □
11 There’s a big window in the living room. □
12 There’s a shower – there’s no bath. □
13 There’s a table and four chairs in the corner. □
14 There’s no sofa. □

3 Look at the picture and write sentences. Use the words in brackets. Then listen and check.
1 (two windows)
   There are two windows in the room.
2 (a big sofa)
   There’s a big sofa in the middle of the room.
3 (two chairs)
4 (desk)
5 (computer)
6 (television)
8 Is there ...?
Prepositions of place (opposite, in front of, between, behind)

Woman: Is there a cash machine near here?
Man: Yes, there is. It's in Marlowe Street, opposite the supermarket.
Woman: Thank you.
Man: You're welcome.

Presentation

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is there a</th>
<th>cash machine</th>
<th>near here?</th>
<th>in the hotel?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Prepositions of place

in (Marlow Street), on the (third) floor

opposite
in front of
between
behind

Key vocabulary
Places in town: café, cash machine, cinema, gym, hotel, office, restaurant, swimming pool, supermarket, taxi rank
In a hotel: reception, lift, the ground/first/second/third floor

Exercises

1 Put the conversations in order.

Conversation 1
☐ Yes?
☐ Yes, there is. It's behind the supermarket.
☐ Thank you.
☐ Is there a taxi rank near here?
☐ Excuse me.
☐ You're welcome.

Conversation 2
☐ Yes?
☐ Thank you.
☐ No, there isn't. But there's a swimming pool on the third floor.
☐ Excuse me.
☐ You're welcome.
☐ Is there a gym in the hotel?
2 Look at the hotel lift and the questions. Write the answers.

1 Is there a restaurant in the hotel? Yes, there is. It's on the first floor. No, there isn't.
2 Is there a gym? 
3 Is there a swimming pool? 
4 Is there a café? 
5 Is there a cash machine? 
6 Where's reception?

3 91.09 Read the answers and look at the map. Write the questions. Then listen and check.

1 Is there a cinema near here? Yes, there is. It's in Gill Street, next to the café.
2 Yes, there is. It's next to the cinema.
3 Yes, there is. It's in Burton Street, behind the café.
4 Yes, there is. It's in Long Street.
5 Yes, there is. It's opposite the cinema.
6 Yes, there is. It's between the supermarket and the restaurant.

4 Answer these questions about your town.

1 Is there a cinema? Where is it? Yes, there is. It's in Union Street opposite the pizza restaurant.
2 Is there a cash machine? Where is it? 
3 Is there a supermarket? Where is it? 
4 Is there a swimming pool? Where is it? 
5 Is there a taxi rank? Where is it? 
6 Is there an Italian restaurant? Where is it?
9 There is/are + some/any
Countable and uncountable nouns

Presentation

Affirmative + a/an/some

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There's</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>biscuit, banana.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an</td>
<td>apple, egg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some</td>
<td>bread, butter, coffee, milk, sugar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| There are | some | apples, bananas, biscuits, eggs, oranges. |

Negative + any

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There isn't</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>bread, butter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There aren't</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>apples, bananas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions + any

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is there</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>coffee? sugar?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are there</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>biscuits? eggs?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

Yes, there is. There are. No, there isn't. There aren't.

Countable and uncountable nouns: some and any
Some nouns are countable: one egg, two eggs, three eggs ... 
Some nouns are uncountable: bread, milk, sugar ...

Use some in affirmative statements ...
• with plural countable nouns: There are some eggs.
• with uncountable nouns: There is some bread.

Use any with countable and uncountable nouns ...
• in negative statements: There aren't any eggs. There isn't any bread.
• in questions: Are there any eggs? Is there any bread?

Key vocabulary  Food and drink: apples, bananas, biscuits, bread, butter, coffee, eggs, milk, oranges, sugar
Exercises

1 Look at the picture. Complete the text with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

apples banana biscuits bread butter coffee eggs milk sugar

There’s some milk and some__ in the fridge and there are some__
under the table. There’s some__ on the table
and there’s a__
on the shelf. There isn’t any__ any__

2 Look at the picture in exercise 1 again. Match the answers to the questions.

1 Is there any milk? a No, there isn’t.
2 Are there any apples? b Yes, there are. They’re in the fridge.
3 Is there any bread? c Yes, there is. It’s on the shelf.
4 Is there any sugar? d Yes, there is. It’s on the table.
5 Are there any biscuits? e Yes, there is. They’re in the fridge.
6 Are there any eggs? f No, there aren’t.
7 Is there any butter? g Yes, there are. They’re under the table.

3 Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with a, an, some or any.

1 There isn’t any bread.
2 There’s orange.
3 There aren’t biscuits.
4 There are eggs.
5 There’s banana.
6 There isn’t butter.
7 There’s coffee.

4 Look at the picture in exercise 3 again. Write questions and answers.

1 coffee Is there any coffee? Yes, there is.
2 biscuits
3 sugar
4 eggs
1 Look at the plan. Complete the description with *There's*, *There isn't* or *There are*.

**Living room**

1. There are two windows in the living room.
2. There's a sofa.
3. There are four chairs and a table in the middle of the room. The television's in the corner.

**Bedroom**

4. The bedroom's big. There's a bed, a desk and a chair. The bed's in the middle of the room. The desk and the chair are in the corner.
5. There's a shower.
6. There's a bath in the bathroom.

2 Complete the table with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Countable</th>
<th>Uncountable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apples</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bananas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eggs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Tick (✓) the possible words.

1. There isn't any ...
   - a milk. ✓
   - b biscuits. ✓
   - c bread. ✓
2. There are some ...
   - a biscuits.
   - b coffee.
   - c sugar.
3. There's a ...
   - a bread.
   - b banana.
   - c apple.
4. There isn't any ...
   - a coffee.
   - b apples.
   - c sugar.
5. There aren't any ...
   - a bananas.
   - b sugar.
   - c eggs.
6. There isn't an ...
   - a apple.
   - b egg.
   - c coffee.
7. Are there any ...
   - a eggs?
   - b bread?
   - c coffee?
8. Is there any ...
   - a milk?
   - b biscuits?
   - c bananas?
9. There are some ...
   - a coffee.
   - b bananas.
   - c eggs.
10. There's a ...
    - a apple.
    - b bread.
    - c biscuit.
4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

| 're are aren't in on some any |

A: Where 1 the car keys? Are there 2 keys in the kitchen?
B: No, there 3 but there are 4 keys in the living room. They're 5 the desk 6 the corner.
A: Are you sure?
B: Oh, sorry. Here they are. They 7 in my bag.

Pronunciation: is/are

5 Listen and tick what you hear.

1 There isn't ... There aren't ...
2 Where's ...? Where are ...?
3 Is there ...? Are there ...?
4 There's ... There are ...
5 There isn't ... There aren't ...
6 Where's ...? Where are ...?
7 Is there ...? Are there ...?
8 There's ... There are ...

6 Write the words for things in the home.

1 d-sk
2 s-f-
3 b-d
4 t-l-v-s--n
5 t-b-
6 sh-w-r
7 b-th
8 d--r
9 w-nd-w
10 ch--r

Vocabulary

7 Look at the picture. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1 The phone's under the chair.  T
2 The bag's on the chair.  F
3 The keys are next to the wallet.  F
4 There are some books in the bag.  T
5 The pens are on the camera.  T
6 The wallet's under the chair.  F
7 The phone's next to the camera.  T
8 The keys are next to the camera.  F
9 The bag is under the table.  T
10 The camera is on the table.  F

8 Circle the word that is different.

1 apples bananas biscuits oranges
2 sugar coffee milk tea
3 café shower supermarket restaurant
4 door hotel office gym
5 camera keys wallet table
6 kitchen bedroom window bathroom
7 sofa chair table reception

Listen again

9 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1 There's some coffee in the fridge.  T
2 There aren't any eggs.  F
3 There's a banana on the table.  T
4 There's some sugar.  T
5 There are some biscuits.  F
**Presentation**

Use *have got* and *has got* to talk about ...

- possessions: *We've got a new car.*
- appearance: *She's got blonde hair.*
- people in your life: *He's got two children.*
- illnesses: *I've got a headache.*

**Affirmative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have got</td>
<td>have got</td>
<td>I've got</td>
<td>You've got</td>
<td>We've got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We've got</td>
<td>They've got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>He's got</td>
<td>She's got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two children</td>
<td>a new car</td>
<td>dark hair</td>
<td>a cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>haven't got</td>
<td>any children</td>
<td>a new car</td>
<td>dark hair</td>
<td>a cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>hasn't got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes/No questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have got</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>any children?</th>
<th>a new car?</th>
<th>dark hair?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has got</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>a cold?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>/you/we/they</th>
<th>have.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>has.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No,</th>
<th>/you/we/they</th>
<th>haven't.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>hasn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** Say *I'm 21. I'm 1 metre 79. I'm hot. I'm cold.* (don't say *I have 21 years. I have 1 metre 79. I have hot. I have cold.* I'm cold. (a feeling) ≠ I've got a cold. (an illness)

**Key vocabulary** Appearance: blue/brown eyes, blonde/brown/dark hair, a nice smile, a tattoo
Illness: a cold, the flu, a headache, paracetamol
Exercises

1 Write the contractions.
1 I have got  I've got  4 He has got
2 She has got
3 We have not got

2 Write sentences.
1 Joe / a nice house
2 Annika and Ray / not / a car
3 you / a bike?
4 Catherine / a sister?
5 we / not / any children
6 I / not / a cold. I / the flu

3 Complete the conversations. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: 1 Have Mark and Anna 2 got any children?
B: Yes, 3 a son and a daughter.

Conversation 2
C: What's the matter?
D: 4 a headache. 5 you a paracetamol?
C: No, 7 . Sorry.

Conversation 3
E: 8 Lizzie 9 a car?
F: Yes, 10 an Audi TT.
E: Really? 11 a boyfriend?

4 Complete the text with is or has got.
Penelope Cruz 1 is an actress. She 2
1m 68. She 3 dark hair and brown eyes. She 4 a nice smile. She 5 from Spain.
She 6 a brother, Eduardo, and a sister, Monica.

5 Write about Johnny Depp. Then listen and check.
1 an actor
2 1m 79
3 brown hair, brown eyes
4 thirteen tattoos
5 from the USA
6 a brother and two sisters
12 Possessive adjectives

Presentation

Use possessive adjectives to talk about objects, people and places.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject pronouns</th>
<th>Possessive adjectives</th>
<th>Example sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>I’ve got my ticket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>Have you got your passport?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>His parents are Italian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>Her father’s from Argentina.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>Venice is famous for its canals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>Our camera’s a Nikon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>Their daughter’s a doctor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A possessive adjective has got one form for singular and plural: his brother, his parents.

Key vocabulary
- Everyday objects: credit card, glasses, laptop, mobile (= mobile phone), passport, ticket
- Adjectives: awful, brilliant, fantastic, great, terrible
- People in your life: mother, father, parents, son, daughter, children, husband, wife, brother, sister

Exercises

1 Write sentences.

1 my keys ✓  
2 your laptop X  
3 our passports ✓  
4 his glasses X  
5 her camera ✓  
6 our credit cards X  
7 my mobile ✓  
8 their tickets ✓
2 Write sentences.

1 I've got a Nikon camera. It's fantastic!
2 She's got a new motorbike. It's great!
3 He's got a Dell laptop. It's brilliant!
4 We've got an old car. It's terrible!
5 They've got an old television. It's awful!

3 Complete the text with his, her, their or its. Then listen and check.

Ana's Argentinian but 1 husband, Jacob, isn't from Argentina. 2 father's Nigerian and 3 mother's Scottish. Ana's got a sister and a brother. 4 sister's a teacher and 5 brother's a doctor. He's married. 6 wife's Italian. They've got two children: a son and a daughter. 7 daughter's ten and 8 son's six. They've also got a dog. 9 name is Rex.

4 Choose the correct words.

1 Jane hasn't got she / her passport.
2 We / Our new motorbike is fantastic.
3 She / Her is a doctor.
4 I / My haven't got a fast car.
5 Where are you / your glasses?
6 He / His father is from the USA.
7 What's it's / its name?
8 They / Their son has got an apartment opposite the park.
9 Have you got I / my phone?
10 We / Our have got a house near here.
11 He / His mobile is on the table.
12 I / My mother is from Madrid.

5 Complete the sentences about a friend. Use the words in brackets.

1 My friend has got two sisters. Their names are Clare and Penny. (brothers/sisters)
   My friend
   (brothers/sisters)
2 He/She
   (married/single)
3 He/She
   (children/dog)
4 He/She
   (car/bike)
13 **this, that, these, those (demonstrative pronouns)**

The pronoun *one*

![Images of a woman and a man looking at clothes.](image)

**Presentation**

**Singular**

- **this**
  - this one

- **that**
  - that one

- **Which one?**
  - The red one.

**Plural**

- **these**
  - these ones

- **those**
  - those ones

- **Which ones?**
  - The blue ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This</th>
<th>That</th>
<th>Which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td></td>
<td>one?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>These</th>
<th>Those</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ones</td>
<td>ones?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key vocabulary**

Clothes and accessories: coat, hat, shirt, shoes, trainers, trousers, sunglasses, watch

Colours: black, white, red, yellow, blue

**Exercises**

1. Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use *this, that, these* or *those*.

   1. Is this your watch?
   2. Are these your sunglasses?
   3. Which one of these is your camera?
   4. Your bike?
   5. Which ones are your books?
   6. Your phone?
2 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This</th>
<th>That</th>
<th>coat</th>
<th>hat</th>
<th>shirt</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>big, small, old.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These</td>
<td>Those</td>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>trainers</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These trainers are old.
2
3
4
5
6

3 Look at the pictures and complete the conversations.

1
A: That's my phone.
B: Which one?
A: The black one.

2
A: That's
B: Which?
A: The

3
A: Those
B: Which?
A: The

4 1.16 Complete the conversation with one, that or which. Then listen and check.

A: Who's 1 girl?
B: 2 3?
A: The 4 in the red shoes.
B: 5 's Sue. She's my girlfriend.
Possessive 's and possessive pronouns

Presentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive 's</th>
<th>Possessive adjective</th>
<th>Possessive pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s laptop.</td>
<td>It’s mine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They’re your...</td>
<td>They’re yours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karen’s mobile.</td>
<td>It’s her mobile.</td>
<td>It’s hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s my sister’s...</td>
<td>It’s his T-shirt.</td>
<td>It’s his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brother’s T-shirt.</td>
<td>It’s our camera.</td>
<td>It’s ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents’ camera.</td>
<td>It’s their camera.</td>
<td>It’s theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possessive 's
- Add ’s to a singular noun: My sister’s husband.
- Add ’ to a plural noun: My sisters’ husbands.

Possessive pronouns
A possessive pronoun has got one form for singular and plural.

It’s my book. It’s mine.

They’re my books. They’re mine.

You can use a noun + possessive ’s in the same way: Whose mobile is this? It’s David’s. / It’s my brother’s.

Whose

Whose laptop is this? It’s mine.

Whose sunglasses are these? They’re mine.
Exercises

1 Write questions with whose and the answers. Then listen and check.

A: Whose mobile is this?
B: I think it's Harry's.
A: Whose books are these?
B: I think they're Lisa's.
A: What is Lisa's mobile?
B: No, she's got a Nokia.
A: That's a nice camera.
B: Yes, it's a Nikon.
A: Have you got Harry's laptop?
B: No, this is Tim's.

2 Write sentences with possessive pronouns.

1 That's Harry's mobile. It's his.
2 Those are Tim's trainers.
3 These are Lisa's books.
4 This is Lisa's laptop.
5 These are Harry's sunglasses.
6 That's Tim's camera.

3 Rewrite the sentences. Use possessive pronouns.

1 This is my laptop and that's your laptop. This is mine and that is yours.
2 Those are their books and these are our books.
3 This is her camera and that's your camera.
4 This is my laptop and that's his laptop.

4 What is the 's in the underlined words? Write is, has or P (for possessive 's).

1 Is this Lisa's mobile? P
No, she's got a Nokia. has
2 That's a nice camera.
Yes, it's a Nikon.
3 Have you got Harry's laptop?
No, this is Tim's.
4 I think Tim's got my book. Where is he?
He's on holiday.
5 This one's mine.
No, that's yours.
6 Where is Tim's camera?
It's in his bag.
15 Review of units 11 to 14

Grammar

1 Choose the correct forms.
   1 I've got blue eyes. / I've got blue eyes.
   2 She hasn't got a motorbike. / She hasn't got a motorbike.
   3 Has you got a cold? / Have you got a cold?
   4 Yes, I have. / Yes, I have.
   5 No, he hasn't. / No, he haven't.
   6 We've got two children. / We've got two children.
   7 He's got a new laptop. / He's got a new laptop.
   8 Have she got dark hair? / Has she got dark hair.

2 Correct the sentences. Use the possessive 's.
   1 Venus is Serena sister. Serena's
   2 Sofia father is Francis.
   3 Bob daughter is Peaches.
   4 The Clintons daughter is Chelsea.
   5 Barbara is George mother.
   6 Jane brother is Peter.
   7 Richard is Judy husband.
   8 Charles is Elizabeth son.

3 Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.
   1 I've got my keys.
   2 London is noisy but our parks are quiet.
   3 Maria has got her guitar lesson tonight.
   4 Mark and Julia are in the house. This is their car.
   5 A: Is this your mobile phone?
      B: No, it isn't. My phone is in my bag.
   6 This is Ben's dog. His name is Loki.
   7 We've got two sons. Their son's names are Matt and Sam.
   8 Jane hasn't got her glasses.

4 Rewrite the sentences. Use It's or They're and the words in the box.

hers  his  mine  ours  theirs  yours

   1 Those are David's keys. They're his.
   2 That's Melanie's camera. It's hers.
   3 This is my car.
   4 These are Jack's sunglasses.
   5 That's Tom and Katie's house.
   6 This is Poppy's laptop.
   7 Those are your trainers.
   8 These are our credit cards.

5 Look at the picture. Write questions and answers.

   1 Which one is Mike's?
      The black one.
   2 Which ones are Ellen's?
      The yellow ones.
   3
   4
Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/

6 Listen to the final s in these words.
/s/ /z/
books keys
shirts trousers

Then listen and tick /s/ or /z/.
1 hotels /s/ /z/ ✓
2 T-shirts /s/ /z/
3 apples /s/ /z/
4 laptops /s/ /z/
5 coats /s/ /z/
6 eyes /s/ /z/

Vocabulary

7 Complete the table with the words in the box.
boyfriend brother daughter
father girlfriend husband
mother sister son wife

8 Match to make six everyday objects.
1 pass era passport
2 credit glasses
3 sun ch
4 lap port
5 cam card
6 wat top

9 Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?
1 John’s got a red T-shirt. T
2 His trousers are black. F
3 Penny’s got a yellow coat. T
4 Her trousers are blue. T
5 She’s got blue eyes. F
6 He’s got blue eyes. ✓
7 They’ve got blonde hair. ✓
8 Their shoes are white. ✓

Listen again

10 Listen and complete the table with their possessions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>mobile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16 Present simple 1
Conjunctions: and/but

Presentation

Use the present simple to talk about …
• routines: I walk to work every day.
• permanent situations: She lives in New York.

Affirmative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>live</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>in London.</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>works</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Third person (he/she/it) s: key spelling rules
• Most verbs: live → lives, start → starts, work → works …
• Verbs ending with -s, -sh or -ch: finish → finishes, watch → watches …
• Verbs ending with consonant + -y: study → studies …
• Irregular verbs: have → has, do → does …
See page 233: Spelling rules

Conjunctions: and/but
• Use and for extra information: He works in a hospital and he lives in Madrid.
• Use but to show difference: I’m from Spain but I live in London.

Key vocabulary Verbs: finish, have, live, start, study, walk, watch (television), work
• Have: have lunch, have a break
• Occupations: banker, chef, doctor, nurse, teacher, waiter

Exercises

1 Write sentences about where they live.

1 I / Spain / but / London
2 Alberto / Spain / and / Madrid
3 Tessa / Greece / and / Athens
4 Jim and I / the UK / but / Tokyo
5 Yang and Li / China / but / Paris
6 Dan / Australia / and / Melbourne

I'm from Spain but I live in London.
Alberto's from Spain and he lives in Madrid.
2 Write sentences about where they work. Use the words in the box.

- bank
- hospital
- school
- restaurant

1. Alberto's a doctor. He works in a hospital.
2. Nina's a banker. She works in a bank.
3. Tessa's a teacher.
4. Dan's a waiter.
5. Yuko and Tomi are nurses.
6. Juana and I are chefs.

3 Choose the correct verbs. Then listen and check.

My wife 1 work / works in a bank and I 2 work / works in a hospital. I 3 start / starts work at nine o'clock every day. My wife 4 start / starts at eight but she 5 have / has a break at half past ten. We both 6 have / has lunch at half past twelve. She 7 finish / finishes work at five o'clock and I 8 finish / finishes at half past five. In the evening she 9 study / studies English and I 10 watch / watches television.

4 Complete the description of Sophie and Emma's routines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sophie</th>
<th>Emma</th>
<th>Larry</th>
<th>Dan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>10:00</td>
<td>09:30</td>
<td>16:30</td>
<td>17:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>15:00</td>
<td>15:00</td>
<td>16:00</td>
<td>16:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>16:30</td>
<td>16:00</td>
<td>23:30</td>
<td>24:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sophie and Emma are chefs. Sophie 1 starts work at ten o'clock and Emma 2 at half past nine. They 3 have a break at half past three. Sophie 4 work at half past four and Emma 5 at four o'clock.

5 Look at the timetable in exercise 4 again. Write a description of Larry and Dan's routines.

Larry starts

6 Write a description of your routine.
17 Present simple 2 (negative and questions)
Subject and object pronouns

Presentation

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>sushi.</td>
<td>pizza.</td>
<td>horror films.</td>
<td>him.</td>
<td>her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't like</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>likes</th>
<th>doesn't like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**TIP** don't = do + not
doesn't = does + not

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sushi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pizza.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>horror films.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>her.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Does</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I / you / we / they</th>
<th>do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he / she</td>
<td>does.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>No,</th>
<th>I / you / we / they</th>
<th>don't.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he / she</td>
<td>doesn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subject and object pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject pronouns</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Object pronouns</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key vocabulary**
People in your life: brother, girlfriend, parents, children, father (dad), mother (mum), friend
Likes and preferences: love, like, prefer, don't like, hate
Exercises

1 Match the questions to the answers.

1 Do you like Matt Damon?
   a No, I don’t. I hate rock music.
2 Do you like pasta?
   b Yes, I do. She’s fantastic.
3 Do you like Avril Lavigne?
   c Yes, I do. He’s great.
4 Do you like hip-hop?
   d Yes, I do but I prefer jazz.
5 Do you like Oasis?
   e Yes, I do. I love Italian food.

2 Read the conversations and name the person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Nancy</th>
<th>Luke</th>
<th>Fran</th>
<th>Matt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hip-hop</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rock</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊😊</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A: Does she like rock?
   B: Yes, she does but she prefers hip-hop.  
   Fran

2 A: Does she like hip-hop?
   B: Yes, she does but she prefers jazz.

3 A: Does he like hip-hop?
   B: No, he doesn’t and he hates jazz.

3 3.1.21 Complete the conversations with do, does, don’t, doesn’t, like or likes. Then listen and check.

1 A: _____________________________ you like pasta?
   B: No, I _____________________________ .

2 A: _____________________________ your boyfriend Chinese food?
   B: No, he _____________________________ but he _____________________________ Japanese food.

3 A: _____________________________ your parents sushi?
   B: My mother _____________________________ it but my father _____________________________ .

4 Choose the correct words.

1 Sharon likes Omah but he doesn’t like__________ she.
2 I like Sharon but I don’t think she likes ________ me.
3 My brother’s girlfriend is awful – I hate ________ she.
4 Jared’s parents are nice. I like ________ they.
5 Tom’s a good friend. We like him and he likes ________ us.
6 Mike doesn’t like Rene and she hates ________ him.

5 3.1.22 Write sentences with object pronouns. Then listen and check.

1 I don’t like hip-hop. I don’t like it.
2 I like the Rolling Stones. _____________________________
3 I don’t like Madonna. _____________________________
4 I love rock. _____________________________
5 I like Tom but I prefer Sally. _____________________________
18 Adverbs of frequency

Presentation

Use adverbs of frequency to talk about how often you do something.

Adverbs of frequency: one-word adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100%</th>
<th>always</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0%</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- One-word adverbs go before the main verb*.

He often
go to the opera.

sometimes
watches football.

never

*but one-word adverbs go after the verb to be:
She is often late for work.

- With not often, use don’t and doesn’t.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>don’t</th>
<th>often go to the opera, watch football.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use a time reference with always: I always go to the cinema at the weekend.

Key vocabulary

Sport and leisure: (play/watch) football, tennis, golf, basketball; (go to the) cinema, theatre, opera

Days of the week: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday

Adverbs of frequency: phrases

When the adverb is a phrase, it goes at the end of the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>once a</th>
<th>twice a</th>
<th>three times a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>day.</td>
<td>week.</td>
<td>month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions

Do you ever watch football?

How often do you go to the opera?
Exercises

1 Look at the table. Write sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Opera</th>
<th>Cinema</th>
<th>Theatre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucy</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>once a year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>every month</td>
<td>twice a week</td>
<td>not often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris and Sally</td>
<td>three times a year</td>
<td>every Tuesday</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Lucy / opera
2 John / opera
3 Lucy / cinema
4 Chris and Sally / cinema
5 John / cinema
6 Chris and Sally / theatre
7 Lucy / theatre
8 John / theatre

Lucy never goes to the opera.
John goes to the opera every month.

2 Put A in the sentences for the words in brackets.

1 I play football twice A week. (a) 5 Li often go to the cinema. (doesn’t)
2 They always go to the cinema Saturdays. (on) 6 Anita goes to the cinema weekend. (every)
3 Jenny goes to the opera once year. (a) 7 I watch football once a. (week)
4 I play basketball three a month. (times) 8 I go to the theatre a year. (twice)

3 Put the words in order.

1 go I never opera the to
2 a football once plays Steve week
3 always Donna golf on plays Sundays
4 go sometimes the theatre they to
5 Carlo doesn’t tennis often play
6 basketball every I play Thursday

I never go to the opera.

4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

do ever every love how to twice

A: Do you 1 ever 2 go the cinema?
B: Yes, I 3 . I go 4 weekend. 5 often do you go to the cinema?
A: Oh, I 6 the cinema. I go 7 a week.

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I always
2 I sometimes
3 I never
19 *Wh*-questions

Presentation

**Verb to be**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>the capital of Ecuador?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are</td>
<td>the colours of the Jamaican flag?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Other verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>tigers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Question words**

Where do you live?  
When is your birthday?  
What is your name?  
Which one do you like?  
Why do you like the blue one?  
Who do you live with?  
How do you spell your name?  
What time do you start work?  
How long is this river?  
How high is Mount Everest?  
How many do you want?  
How often do you go to the cinema?

**Exercises**

1 Choose the correct words.

1. Where *do / does* you live?  
2. What *is / are* the capital of Sweden?  
3. What time *do / does* she start work?  
4. What *is / are* your name?  
5. Who *do / does* they live with?  
6. How many *do / does* he want?  
7. How long *is / are* this film?  
8. Which one *do / does* your brother like?  
9. When *is / are* his birthday?  
10. What *do / does* his sister do?

Host: For $100,000 ... When do Americans celebrate Independence Day? Is it on May 1, June 14, July 4?  
Contestant: I think it's July 4.  
Host: That's correct. Now, for $175,000 ... What are the colours of the Jamaican flag? Are they black, gold and green, red, green and gold, red, green and black?  
Contestant: I think it's black, gold and green.  
Host: That's correct. Well done. Now, for $250,000 ... Where do tigers live? Is it in Africa, in Asia or in Europe?  
Contestant: Er ... is it Africa?
2 Complete the quiz with question words. Then do the quiz and check your answers below.

Quiz

1. does the President of the USA live?
   - A in the White House
   - B in the Green House
   - C in the White Palace

2. do penguins live?
   - A in the Arctic
   - B in the Antarctic
   - C in the UK

3. high is Mount Everest?
   - A 7,532 metres
   - B 8,848 metres
   - C 9,321 metres

4. does your brain stop growing?
   - A at 13 years old
   - B at 15 years old
   - C at 18 years old

5. of these is a hexagon?
   - A
   - B
   - C

6. is the capital of Ecuador?
   - A La Paz
   - B Lima
   - C Quito

7. long do elephants live?
   - A 35 years
   - B 70 years
   - C 100 years

8. is Luke Skywalker's father?
   - A Darth Vader
   - B Chewbacca
   - C Yoda

9. do bats sleep?
   - A at night
   - B in the day
   - C at the weekend

10. does 'aloha' mean in Hawaiian?
    - A hello
    - B goodbye
    - C hello or goodbye

3 Match the questions to the answers.

   - g Eight hours.

2. What do you do in the evening?  7. Where do you work?
   - a In London.

3. What do you have for breakfast?  8. Afternoon?
   - b Half past twelve.

4. What time do you have lunch?  9. For lunch?
   - c I watch television.

5. Where do you have lunch?  10. dinner?
   - d In a bank.

   - e In a restaurant.

   - f Toast and coffee.

4. Write questions about Yuko. Then listen and check.

1. What time does she have breakfast? At eight o'clock.
2. study? In the morning.
3. for lunch? A sandwich.
4. afternoon? She plays golf.
5. dinner? In a restaurant.
6. television in the evening? For two hours.
20 Review of units 16 to 19

Grammar

1 Look at Bill's sentences. Then write about Chantal using the words in brackets.

1 I live in London. (Paris)
   She lives in Paris.

2 I work in a school. (a bank)

3 I start work at nine o'clock. (eight)

4 I finish work at half past four. (six)

5 I have sandwiches for lunch. (sushi)

6 I study French. (English)

7 I play football. (tennis)

8 I watch television every day. (never)

9 I never go to the opera. (once a month)

10 I love rock music. (hate)

11 I sleep ten hours every night. (six)

12 I don't often eat in restaurants. (often)

2 Write Chantal's answers to the questions.

1 Do you live in Paris?
   Yes, I do.

2 Does Bill live in Paris?
   No, he doesn't.

3 Do you like rock music?

4 Does Bill like rock music?

5 Do you ever eat in restaurants?

6 Do you like sushi?

7 Does Bill work in a school?

8 Do you watch television?

9 Does Bill go to the opera?

10 Does Bill play football?

3 Complete the sentences with do, does, don't or doesn't.

1 Does your uncle like jazz?

2 Bill live in Paris - he lives in London.

3 I like Japanese food but I like sushi.

4 Where you live?

5 What time Chantal start work?

6 I go to the theatre. I prefer the cinema.

7 Marc play tennis?

8 How often he play tennis?

9 How long you have for lunch?

10 you like football?

11 What you have for breakfast?

12 Anne eat pasta.
4 Put the words in order.
1 but like hip-hop I I prefer rock
like hip-hop but I prefer rock.
2 always cinema go Monday on the to we
3 doesn’t often she television watch
4 don’t I jazz like
5 a bank my in in sister Paris works
6 at half Jim starts nine past work
7 play I a once tennis week
8 do ever go the theatre to you?

5 Choose the correct pronouns.
1 I/ Me like she / her but she / her doesn’t like I / me.
2 We / Us don’t like he / him and he / him doesn’t like we / us.
3 They / Them like I / me and I / me like they / them.

6 Write the question words.
1 When is Martin’s birthday?
2 are you from?
3 time do you get up?
4 one does she prefer?
5 is that man over there?

Pronunciation: /s/, /z/ or /iz/.

7 Listen to the final s in these verbs.
/s/ works /z/ lives /iz/ finishes
Listen and tick /s/, /z/ or /iz/.
1 plays /s/ /z/ /iz/
2 watches /s/ /z/ /iz/
3 does /s/ /z/ /iz/
4 eats /s/ /z/ /iz/
5 studies /s/ /z/ /iz/

Vocabulary

8 Complete with go, play or have.
1 play football
2 to the theatre
3 a break
4 lunch
5 golf
6 to the cinema
7 dinner
8 to the opera
9 breakfast

9 Match to make five words for people in your life.
1 bro ents brother
2 girl er
3 par ther
4 moth dren
5 chil friend

10 Complete the table with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>banker</th>
<th>chef</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>nurse</th>
<th>teacher</th>
<th>waiter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>school</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 banker</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listen again

11 Listen and write the questions.
1 What time does she have breakfast?
2
3
4
5
6
21 can (ability)
Adverbs of manner

Use can to describe ability.

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You / He / She / It / We / They</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>can't (cannot)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions

Can | I / you / he / she / it / we / they | play ...?

Short answers

Yes, I can. No, I can't.

Can is a modal verb. This means no third person s.
Say He can play the guitar. (don't say He can play the guitar.)

Key vocabulary Adverbs of manner: (really/very) well/badly/beautifully/fast/slowly not very well = badly

Exercises

1 Match the questions to the answers.

1 Can you speak Chinese?                        a Yes, I can play the saxophone.
2 Can you run fast?                             b No, but I can swim fast.
3 I can play the guitar. Can you play a musical instrument? c Yes, I can. But not very well.
4 I can't play the guitar. Can you?             d No, but I can play tennis.
5 Can you play golf?                            e No, I can't, but my friend can play really well.
2 Complete the conversations with can or can’t.

Conversation 1
A: I 1 can swim ten kilometres. 2 you?
B: No, I 3 swim but I 4 run fast.

Conversation 2
C: 5 you play the piano?
D: No, I 6 but I can sing very well.
C: Great. 7 you sing this song?

Conversation 3
E: My mother and father are from Barcelona. They 8 speak Catalan.
F: 9 you and your brothers speak Catalan?
E: No, we 10 speak it very well. We always speak Spanish.

Conversation 4
G: 11 you play tennis?
H: Yes, I 12 but not very well. 13 you?
G: No, I 14 I’m terrible but my sister 15 play really well.

3 Choose the correct forms.
1 Can/ Can’t you play the piano?
2 Can you speak / play Arabic?
3 No, I can / can’t.
4 She can’t swim very well / not very well.
5 Yes, I can / can’t.
6 Can you play the guitar well / not very well?
7 I can / can’t run fast but I can swim well.

4 Write the conversations. Then listen and check.

1 you + speak Spanish? → no: speak Chinese

A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: No, I can’t. I can speak Chinese.

2 they + play the piano? → yes + very well

A: 
B: 

3 she + run fast? → yes

A: 
B: 

4 you + play tennis? → yes: also + play golf

A: 
B: 

5 he + speak three languages? →
no + but + speak two languages

A: 
B: 

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I can play but I can’t play .
2 I can speak but I can’t speak .
Presentation

Use Can I ...? and Can you ...? for offers and requests.

Offers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can I help (you)?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I get you a drink?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can I have a drink, please?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can you help me, please?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TIP Notice you and me in offers and requests.
Offer: Can I + verb + you ...?
Request: Can you + verb + me ...?

Key vocabulary Verbs: ask, borrow, buy, close, have, help, get, lend, open, speak (to), use, wait

Responding to offers and requests

A: Can I help you?
B: Yes, please. / Thanks very much.

A: Can you help me, please?
B: Sure. / Certainly. / Of course. / No, sorry.

Exercises

1 Complete the questions with Can I or Can you. Are they requests or offers? Write R or O.

1 Can I help you? O
2 help me, please? R
3 ask you a question? R
4 have a drink? R
5 get me a drink? R
6 get you a drink? O
7 buy you lunch? O
8 use your phone? O
9 lend me your phone? O
10 borrow your phone? O
Write requests or offers. Add possessive adjectives where necessary. Then listen and check.

1 I / borrow / car?
2 you / speak / to her?
3 I / open / the window?
4 I / buy / you / lunch?
5 you / get / me / a drink?
6 I / carry / bag?
7 you / help / me?
8 you / lend / me / phone?
9 I / use / laptop?
10 you / answer / the phone?

Put the conversations in order.

Conversation 1
- Yes, can I speak to Maria Turner, please?
- Yes, thanks very much.
- Hello. Can I help you?
- I'm afraid not. She isn't here today. Can I get her secretary?

Conversation 2
- Can I get you some water?
- Hello, Max. How are you?
- Sure.
- Thanks very much. And can you open the window?
- Fine, but it's very hot today!

Conversation 3
- I don't have any money. Can you buy me lunch today?
- Well, can I borrow some money?
- Sorry, I can't go for lunch today. I don't have time.
- Certainly. How much do you need?
- Can I ask you a question?
- Sure.

Conversation 4
- Yes. Press this button.
- Sure. Here it is.
- Excuse me. Can I use your phone, please?
- Thanks. Sorry, it doesn't work. Can you help me?

Look at the offers and requests. Choose the best responses.

1 Can you answer the phone for me?  a Sure.  b Yes, I can. Do you want me to?
2 Can I show you how to use this machine?  a Thanks very much.  b Yes, you can.
3 Can we have a break?  a Yes, thanks.  b Certainly.
4 Can you help me, please?  a Of course.  b Thanks.
5 Can I have a glass of water, please?  a No, you can't.  b Certainly.
6 Can your daughter play the piano?  a Yes, she can.  b Certainly.
7 Can I help you lift this?  a Yes, you can.  b Yes, thanks.
8 I can't play chess. Can you?  a No, I can't.  b No, thanks.
23 would like + noun (requests and offers)

Presentation

Use would like + noun for polite requests and offers.

Requests

I'd like

Would you like

We'd like

a table for two.

a dessert?

a cup of coffee.

some water.

Responses

Certainly. / Sure.

Yes, please.

No, thanks.

TIP

I'd = I would

We'd = We would

Offers

Would you like

Would you like

some water?

some water?

TIP

Don't say No, I wouldn't. It isn't polite.

Key vocabulary

In a restaurant: waiter, table, the menu, the bill, order (food)

Food and drink: cheese, (a cup of) coffee, dessert, green salad, ice cream, soup, water, wine

Exercises

1 Complete the conversations with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

Certainly I'd like please thanks we'd like Would Would-you-like

Conversation 1

Waiter: Good evening. My name's Mario and I'm your waiter.
Customer: Hello.
Waiter: Would you like the wine menu?
Customer: Yes, . And some water, please.
Waiter: .
Conversation 2
Customer: Excuse me, we’d like to order now.
Waiter: Sure.
Customer: 5 like some soup and he’d like a green salad.
Waiter: Certainly. 6 you like some wine?
Customer: No, 7. But I’d 8 a cup of tea, please.

2 Put the words in order.
1 like please soup I’d some
2 you like would the menu?
3 like I’d coffee some
4 you some would bread like?
5 we’d please like some water
6 I’d bill like please the

3 Write offers and responses for each picture. Then listen and check.

1 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  
B: No, thanks. I’d like the bill, please.

2 A:  
B:  

3 A:  
B:  

4 A:  
B:  

5 A:  
B:  

6 A:  
B:  

57
Hi Susie

I'm happy you can come to my party. My house is near yours. Go straight to Wellbeck Street and turn right. Don't cross the street but stop at the second traffic lights and turn left. My house is number 3 on Millen Road. For help, print this map.

Tessa

PS Please bring a friend!

Presentation

Use the imperative for ...

- giving directions: Go straight to ..., Turn left at the traffic lights.
- orders: Stop! Go! Be quiet!
- instructions: Print (this map). Send an email.

You can use the imperative for requests and offers to friends. You can add Please:

Please bring a friend. Please come in.

Affirmative

Turn left.
Go straight.

Negative

Don't turn left.
Don't stop.

Say Stop! (don't say You stop!)

Key vocabulary

Directions: turn left/right, go straight, cross (the road)
Places in town: road, sign, street, supermarket, traffic lights, map
Exercises

1 Look at the map. Complete the directions with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

- don't
- go
- go
- stop
- turn
- turn

Hi Tom.
The directions are easy to my flat.  
1  straight to the big supermarket near your house and  
2  right. Then  
3  to Mile Road  
and 4  cross the road but  
5  left at the traffic lights. I live at number 35.

Kerry

2 Match the orders to the signs.

- a Don't smoke.  
- b Stop.  
- c Go.  
- d Don't turn right.  
- e Don't walk.  
- f Don’t take photographs.

1 b 2 3 4 5 6

3 Match 1–10 to a–j.

1 Come in!  
2 Where’s the supermarket?  
3 It’s expensive.  
4 The traffic light is red.  
5 This exercise is difficult.  
6 It’s hot in here.  
7 I’m thirsty.  
8 There’s a map with the email.  
9 It’s late.  
10 I haven’t got a pen.

- a Go to bed!  
- b Please open the window.  
- c Take a seat.  
- d Turn left and it’s in front of you.  
- e Stop.  
- f Lend me yours, please.  
- g Don’t buy it.  
- h Have some water.  
- i Print it.  
- j Please help me.
25 Review of units 21 to 24

Grammar

1 Complete the requests and offers with you or me.
   1 Can I help you?
   2 Would you like a table for two?
   3 Can I get a drink?
   4 Get a drink, please.
   5 Can I lend your mobile phone?
   6 Excuse me. Can I speak to Laura?
   7 Can you help?
   8 Can I buy lunch?
   9 Would you like the bill now?
   10 Can I ask a question?

2 Correct the mistakes.
   1 He cans play the piano.
      He can play the piano.
   2 I don't can sing well.
   3 Do you would like the menu?
   4 Does he can play tennis?
   5 Stops at the traffic lights!
   6 She can fast run.
   7 I like some water, please.
   8 The light is red. Stops!
   9 Come in. Take a seat. You have a drink!
   10 Turn right! Don't to turn left!

3 Choose the correct responses.
   1 I'd like a menu, please.
      a Of course. b Yes, I'd like.
   2 Would you like some water?
      a No, thanks. b No, I would.
   3 Can you speak English?
      a Yes, I speak. b Yes, I can.
   4 Can I borrow your car?
      a Yes, I can. b No, sorry.
   5 Can you help me?
      a Certainly. b Excuse me.
   6 Can you play the saxophone?
      a Well. b No, not very well.
   7 Would you like some soup?
      a Yes, I'd like. b Yes, please.
   8 Can you help?
      a Sure. b Yes, please.
   9 We'd like this table, please.
      a No, thanks. b Certainly.
   10 Can I get you a drink?
      a Thanks very much. b Yes, I can.

4 Write R (request), O (offer), D (direction) or O (order).
   1 Can I borrow your map?
   2 Would you like lunch?
   3 Be quiet!
   4 Turn left at the supermarket.
   5 Stop!
   6 Can you stop?
   7 Can I get you a drink?
   8 Don't cross at the traffic lights.
   9 Go now!
   10 Please bring some wine.
Find three sentences.

1. Can you help me please bring a friend.
   Can you help me, please?
   Please bring a friend.

2. Can you give me a drink please go

3. No I can't play the piano please

4. Can you lend me your phone me
   at ten o'clock

5. Yes I would not like a dessert
   thank you very much

Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of can

6. Listen to the pronunciation of can and can't in these sentences.

   /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/
   Can you sing? I can't play the piano. I can sing.
   Yes, I can.

Now listen to five sentences and tick the pronunciation you hear.

1. /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/
2. /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/
3. /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/
4. /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/
5. /kæn/    /kænt/    /kan/

Vocabulary

7. Circle the word that is different.

   1. guitar piano saxophone sing
   2. well badly beautiful slowly
   3. please ask borrow lend
   4. waiter map menu bill
   5. cheese coffee dessert green salad
   6. road sign right traffic lights

8. Choose the correct verbs.

   1. Can you sing / speak Chinese?
   2. How well can you run / play tennis?
   3. Can I lend / borrow your car?
   4. Open / Close the window! It's very cold.
   5. Can I get / have you a tea or coffee?
   6. Can I ask / speak to the manager, please?
   7. We like / 'd like some water, please.
   8. Turn / Cross left at the supermarket.
   9. Turn / Go straight to the end of the street.
   10. Go / Cross the road at the traffic lights.

Listen again

9. Listen and tick (√) what they would like.

Menu

soup
bread and cheese
green salad
ice cream

Drinks

water
wine
tea
coffee
Comparatives

Presentation

Use the comparative form to compare two things.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>more beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>less expensive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regular adjectives

Add -er to short adjectives: younger, faster ...

Use more/less with long adjectives: more beautiful, less expensive ...

Irregular adjectives

Some adjectives are irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

than

You often use than after the comparative adjective: My car is faster than your car.

Key spelling rules

- Double the last consonant + -er for some one-syllable adjectives: hot → hotter, big → bigger ...
- Change y to i: happy → happier, angry → angrier ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

Key vocabulary

Adjectives: young/old, fast/slow, cheap/expensive, big/small, good/bad, hot/cold, long/short, tall/short, boring/interesting, dangerous, safe, beautiful, happy (short is the opposite of long and tall)
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1 Your car is __________________ (fast) than mine.
2 My brother is __________________ (old) than me.
3 I can buy a laptop – they’re __________________ (cheap) now.
4 A bicycle is __________________ (expensive) than a car.
5 South Africa is __________________ (hot) than Iceland.
6 I speak good English, but hers is __________________ (good).
7 He’s __________________ (happy) because it’s the holiday.
8 You are __________________ (beautiful) than ever!
9 It’s __________________ (safe) to travel by train than by car.

2 Look at the pictures and write comparative sentences.

1 motorbike / fast / bicycle
   A motorbike is faster than a bicycle.

2 she / tall / him

3 red bike / expensive / blue bike

4 her book / interesting / his book

3 Read the sentences. Then write two sentences to compare the information.

1 Karen’s twenty-nine. Tom’s thirty.
   Karen’s younger than Tom. Tom’s older than Karen.

2 The Mississippi River is 3,733 kilometres. The Amazon River is 6,712 kilometres.

3 My flat is 1,000 m². Your house is 1,500 m².

4 Today, the temperature in Rome is 21°C. London is 5°C.
27 Superlatives

Presentation

Use the superlative form to compare three or more things.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heaviest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>loudest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>most dangerous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**the**

You use *the* before the superlative:

*Blue whales are the heaviest animals.*

Regular adjectives

Add *-est* to short adjectives: *fastest, heaviest* ...

Use *most/least* with long adjectives: *most dangerous, least expensive* ...

Irregular adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key vocabulary Animals: blue whale, cheetah, crocodile, elephant, giraffe, snake, tortoise
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1 Mr Bao from Mongolia is the tallest man in the world.
2 The (short) woman in the world is 79 centimetres tall.
3 The blue whale is the (big) animal in the world.
4 I think snakes are the (dangerous) animals.
5 The River Nile in Egypt is the (long) river in the world.
6 Damascus in Syria is the (old) city in the world.
7 Luxembourg is the (safe) city in Europe.
8 Moscow is the (expensive) city in the world.
9 Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
10 I'm sure elephants are the (heavy) animals on land.

2 Write a comparative and superlative sentence with the adjectives. Then listen and check.

1 Animal: tortoise / snake / cheetah (slow)
   A snake is slower than a cheetah.
   The tortoise is the slowest animal.
2 Country: Ethiopia / Italy / Norway (hot)
   Italy
   Ethiopia
3 Ocean: the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean / the Mediterranean Sea (big)
   The Indian Ocean
   The Pacific Ocean
4 Country: Switzerland / India / Russia (small)
   India
   Switzerland
5 Transport: aeroplane / car / bicycle (fast)
   A car
   The aeroplane

3 Correct the sentences.

1 I'm the worst at English in my class.
   I'm the worst at English in my class.
2 I think Brazil is best football team in the world.
3 Snakes are the more dangerous animals in my country.
4 I don't think he's a gooder actor than De Niro.
5 Your bags are heavy but my bag is the most heavy.
Presentation

Use adverbs to talk about how people do something:
They play beautifully.
Do they play any songs quietly?

Regular adverbs
Add -ly to an adjective to make an adverb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>loudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quietly</td>
<td>quietly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>badly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 233: Spelling rules

Irregular adverbs
Some adjectives and adverbs are irregular. Do not add -ly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Position of adverbs
The adverb often comes:
- after the object of the sentence: He plays the saxophone well.
- after the verb if there is no object: He can play well. (don't say He plays well the saxophone.)

Tip: You can add really or very to some adverbs: He plays the drums really loudly. She sings very well.
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the adverb form of the adjectives.
1 Your sister sings beautifully (beautiful).
2 Why do you play your music loudly (loud)?
3 Please work quietly (quiet).
4 We’re late! You need to walk quickly (quick).
5 Play this part of the music slowly (slow).
6 That’s amazing. You play the guitar really well (good).
7 He speaks really fast (fast).
8 Jane and Steve are happily married (happy).
9 I play tennis really badly (bad).
10 The party will end really late (late).
11 My mother and father work really hard (hard).
12 I left work early (early).

2 Choose the correct words. Then listen and check.
1 I play the guitar very badly/badly.
2 Her hair is beautiful/beautifully.
3 I can’t hear you. Speak loudly/loudly for me, please.
4 Close the door quietly/quietly. Natasha is sleeping.
5 Your dog runs quickly/quickly.
6 Let’s take the train. The bus is very slowly/slowly at this time.
7 I’m happy/happily today. I passed my tests!
8 That music is very loudly/noisy.
9 You dance really well/good.
10 Our children play happily/happy in the garden.
11 She’s a quiet/quietly girl.
12 Eat your food slowly/slowly. There’s no hurry.

3 Correct the adverbs.
1 I can swim very fast quickly.
2 You played that song beautifully/well.
3 I want to leave work early quickly.
4 Walk quietly. There’s an exam next door.
5 I speak English very well/goodly.
6 Do you work happily/quietly?

4 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.
1 I speak English beautifully.
2 My friend speaks English quickly.
3 My teacher speaks English well.
4 I speak English well but I speak English badly.
Comparative adverbs

Who is the best employee? Who works harder? Pierre or Paolo?

Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo ...
... but Paolo goes home later than Pierre ...
... and Paolo works more quickly than Pierre ...
... but Pierre speaks better English than Paolo.

Presentation

Use comparative adverbs to compare how people do something:

Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo.
Pablo goes home later than Pierre.

With adverbs ending in -ly, you usually say more + -ly.
With some adverbs (loud, quick, slow) you can also add -er. This is more informal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Comparative adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>earlier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>harder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loudly</td>
<td>more loudly / louder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quietly</td>
<td>more quietly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>more quickly / quicker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>more slowly / slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with comparative adverbs.

1 I get up later (late) than you.
2 He starts work earlier (early) these days.
3 I can't sing better (well) than Pavarotti.
4 This computer works faster (fast) than the old one.
5 Can you drive more slowly (slow), please?
6 They work harder (hard) than my parents.
7 Pierre swims better (well) than Paolo.
8 Can you speak more quietly (quiet), please?
9 I think girls can shout more loudly (loud) than boys!

2 Read the two sentences. Compare them in two ways.

I get up at 6 a.m. You get up at 7 a.m.
1 You get up later than me.
2 I get up earlier than you.

Michael runs 1 kilometre in 7 minutes 30 seconds. Martin runs 1 kilometre in 6 minutes.
3 Michael
4 Martin

Victoria plays the piano very well. Julia plays it badly.
5 Victoria
6 Julia

3 Put the words in the order.

a speak you slowly more can?
b you more can speak loudly?
c our meeting earlier starts

d starts later on Tuesdays work he

4 Complete the telephone conversation with sentences a–d from exercise 3. Then listen and check.

A: Good morning. Can I help you?
B: Hello. Can I speak to Pierre?
A: Sorry, I can't hear you. 1
B: I'd like to speak to Pierre, please.
A: Sorry, he isn't here. 2. Can I take a message?
B: Yes, please. My name is Agathe. Can you tell him 3 tomorrow?
A: Sorry. 4
B: Sure. Our meeting starts at twelve o'clock, not two o'clock tomorrow.
A: OK. Thanks.
1 Complete the adverts with the correct form of the words in the box.

- expensive
- fast
- good
- hard
- hot
- well
- quiet

Is your car slow?

Would you like a 1 faster car than your old one? Is your old car expensive?

Would you like a 2 car?

OF COURSE YOU WOULD! DRIVE A XT007 TODAY.

For the 3 experience on the road!

My dream holiday has a sun as 6 as this and there are no people so it’s as 7 __________ as this. But it isn’t as expensive as this.

Translators WANTED

Do you work 4 than other people?

Can you speak Chinese 5 ?

We need translators for our new business in Beijing.

No problem. Just call: 0800 777 7000 and book a cheap dream holiday today!

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1 Can you play golf better than

2 The weather today is hotter than

3 Blue whales are biggest animals

4 He’s the happiest student in my class

5 I run fast than you.

6 Is he worse at English than you?

7 A tortoise goes slowly than a snail

8 This ice cream is the bestest in

9 This café is expensive than that

10 This TV show is funny than the

3 Complete the adjectives and adverbs.

1 My brother is young 6 than

2 Is this the heaviest animal

3 Your children play very quiet

4 Can you speak more loud

5 Paolo gets home late than

6 You sing really bad!

7 Can you get up early tomorrow

8 Walk more quick, please

4 Put the words in order.

1 bigger London than Edinburg!

2 the this film other than longer

3 study hard they exams their
Listen and underline the stressed words.

1. Whales are bigger than elephants.
2. Mike's bigger than Martin.
3. English is easier than Maths.
4. Your car isn't faster than mine.
5. Tom is taller than his brother.
6. This is the most expensive car.

Circle the word that is different.

1. Animals on land: cheetah giraffe blue whale
2. Places to eat and drink: café restaurant supermarket
3. Places to buy things: shop library supermarket
4. Transport: office bus underground
5. When you get up: late early loudly
6. How you sing: slowly well badly
7. How you run: quickly early slowly

Write opposite adjectives in the crossword.

Across
3. bad cold
6. long old
7. boring safe
9. fast expensive
10. quiet big

Down
1. good better best
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

Listen again

To: 
From: Agathe
The meeting starts tomorrow. It starts at 12 p.m. not at 2 p.m.
Use the present continuous (to be + -ing) to talk about actions right now.

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/she</th>
<th>You/we/they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>'m</td>
<td>'m not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she</td>
<td>'s</td>
<td>isn't</td>
<td>having a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/we/they</td>
<td>'re</td>
<td>aren't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes/No questions**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are/Is</td>
<td>you/they</td>
<td>having a shower?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wh- questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>are/you/they</th>
<th>eating?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What/Where</td>
<td>is/he/she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key spelling rules**

- Most verbs: read → reading, sleep → sleeping ...
- Verbs ending consonant + -e: have → having, come → coming ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes/No</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>he/she/it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you/we/they are.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>I'm not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes/No</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>he/she/it isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you/we/they aren't.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key vocabulary** Verbs: come, cook, have (a shower), play (chess), read, sleep, watch (television/a film)
Exercises

1. Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the present continuous.

1. Sam (cook). He (have) a shower.
   Sam isn’t cooking. He’s having a shower.

2. Catherine and Ali (watch) television. They (read).

3. Antonio and Julia (cook). They (play) chess.

4. Lucia (read) a book. She (play) chess.

5. Julia (watch) television. She (sleep).

6. Mike and Tom (read). They (cook).

2. Answer the questions about the people in exercise 1.

1. Is Julia cooking? No, she isn’t.
2. Are Mike and Tom playing chess? 
3. Is Lucia reading? 
4. Are Catherine and Ali watching television?
5. Are Antonio and Julia cooking?
6. Is Sam having a shower?

3. Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

Lewis
☐ Me? I’m watching television.
☐ Hi, Marie. I’m fine.
☐ Yes, it’s excellent. Come and watch it.
☐ Hello?
☐ I’m watching a film.

Marie
☐ What are you watching?
2. Hello, Lewis. It’s Marie. How are you?
☐ What are you doing?
☐ OK. See you in five minutes.
☐ Is it any good?
32 Present simple and present continuous
State verbs

Hi,
We’re in Greece. The hotel is beautiful. The sun’s shining and I’m sitting by the swimming pool. Jack’s swimming in the pool and the kids are playing football on the beach. We love it here.
How are things at the office? Are you all working hard?
All the best,
Sarah

Presentation

Present simple
Use the present simple to talk about …
- situations that do not change:
  Sarah lives in Birmingham.
- routines:
  She travels to work by bus.

Present continuous
Use the present continuous to talk about …
- temporary situations:
  She’s staying in a hotel in Greece.
- actions now:
  Right now she isn’t working. She’s on holiday.

State verbs
You don’t normally use these verbs in the continuous form: be, like, love, hate, want.

Present continuous: key spelling rules
- Verbs ending consonant + vowel + consonant: sit → sitting, swim → swimming …
- Verbs ending consonant + vowel + -y: stay → staying, play → playing …

See Unit 31 and page 233: Spelling rules

Key vocabulary Verbs: boil, cycle, do (your homework), drive, eat, freeze, hate, learn, like, live, love, make (friends), play, sit, smoke, start, stay, study, swim, take (the train), turn off, want, watch (TV), work (hard), write (to somebody)
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present simple or present continuous of the verbs.

1. Helen ___________ (work) in the hospital from Monday to Friday.
2. She ___________ (not work) at the moment. It's Saturday and she ___________ (read) a book in the garden.
3. She usually ___________ (cycle) to work.
4. Today she ___________ (not cycle) to work because it ___________ (rain). She ___________ (drive) her car to the hospital.

Choose the correct forms.

1. Tigers ___________ are living in India.
2. Usually I ___________ / 'm ___________ driving to the office, but this week I ___________ / 'm ___________ taking the train.
3. Oh, no! It ___________ / 's ___________ raining again.
4. No, thank you. I ___________ / 'm ___________ not smoking.
5. A: Do you like / Are you liking opera?
   B: Yes, I do. / am.
6. A: What do you do / are you doing?
   B: I ___________ / 'm ___________ writing to my parents.
7. A: Is the tea ready?
   B: Almost. The water ___________ / 's ___________ boiling.

Marcia is studying Italian in Rome. Complete her email to her parents.

Use the present simple or present continuous of the verbs. Then listen and check.

Hi,

Rome is fantastic. I ___________ (have) a great time and I ___________ (learn) a lot of Italian. School ___________ (start) at 09:30 every day. We ___________ (study) for four hours, then we ___________ (have) lunch. The classes ___________ (be) excellent.

I ___________ (have) lunch right now. I ___________ (sit) in a beautiful café in Piazza di Spagna. I ___________ (eat) pasta and I ___________ (do) my homework. The other students ___________ (be) very nice - I ___________ (make) a lot of new friends.

See you soon,

Marcia
Present continuous (for future arrangements)

Presentation

You can use the present continuous to talk about personal plans and future arrangements. You often mention the time and/or place.

Key vocabulary  Time references: in the morning/afternoon/evening, all day, at the weekend, next week

Exercises

1  Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

- On the Beach 2. It starts at eight o'clock.
- I’m not doing anything. Why?
- We’re going to the cinema. Would you like to come?
- What are you doing on Friday?
- Yes, please. What film are you seeing?

2  Write sentences about their plans for next week. Use the present continuous.

1 I / see Anne / Monday morning
   I’m seeing Anne on Monday morning.

2 I / go to the cinema / Tuesday evening

3 Louise / not have lunch with Rita / Sunday

4 Max / go to the beach / Friday morning

5 Where / you have dinner / Wednesday evening?

6 Who / they meet / Monday morning?
Imagine this is your diary. Match the questions to the answers.

- Are you free on Monday morning? [ ]
- Who are you going to the beach with? [ ]
- Are you playing football at the weekend? [ ]
- Are you seeing Rosa next week? [ ]
- What are you doing on Saturday? [ ]
- What are you doing on Tuesday evening? [ ]
- What film are you seeing? [ ]
- Are you free on Wednesday morning? [ ]
- When are you going to the beach? [ ]
- When are you seeing Jenna? [ ]

Look at the diary again. Complete the questions for these answers.

1. What are you doing on Wednesday afternoon? 
   I'm playing tennis with Dale.

2. Who Wednesday evening?
   Rosa.

3. When ?
   On Sunday.

4. What ?
   Nothing.

5. Where Friday?
   To the beach.

6. When with Ali?
   On Monday morning.
Hi K,
I’m doing my final exams this week. I’m going to travel around the USA in August and September. What about you? What are you going to do?
Luke

Presentation

Use going to for future intentions. It is similar to the present continuous.

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>am not</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>isn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>aren’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

Are you going to travel around the USA?

Short answers

Yes, I am. No, I’m not.

What are you going to do?

Wh- questions

Exercises

1 What are they going to do in the summer? Answer the questions.

Mike

I’m going to travel around the USA.

Julia

I’m going to work in a laboratory.

George and Morry

We’re going to have a holiday in Spain.

Nicola

I’m going to learn to drive.

1 What’s Mike going to do?
2 What’s Julia going to do?
3 What are George and Morry going to do?
4 What’s Nicola going to do?

He’s going to travel around the USA.

He’s going to have a holiday in Spain.
2 Answer the questions.
1. Is Mike going to travel around the USA? Yes, he is.
2. Are George and Morry going to have a holiday? ________________________
3. Is Mike going to learn to drive? ________________________
4. Is Julia going to work in a laboratory? ________________________
5. Are George and Morry going to travel around the USA? ________________________

3 Complete the conversation with going to and the verbs in brackets.
Richard: 1. (we book) a taxi tonight? Sally: No. It's OK. Michelle (drive) us there. Richard: But she (not know) anyone at the party. Sally: I know. She isn't coming to the party. She (meet) a friend in town so she (take) us. Richard: Oh, I see.

4 Complete the conversation with going to and the verbs in the box. Then listen and check.
- de - do stay travel teach work
Jeff: What 1. are you going to do in the summer, Teresa?
Teresa: Alec and I 2. English in Africa.
Jeff: How long 3. there?
Teresa: Six weeks. We 4. in a primary school in Sudan. What 5. , Jeff?
Jeff: I 6. around Europe.

5 Put the words in order.
1. are do going in the summer to what you? What are you going to do in the summer?
2. a I’m going have holiday not to a in going I’m laboratory to work
3. a going I’m study to
4. are going study to what you ?
5. Physics going I’m study to
6. are study what to after you going university ?

6 There is one word missing in each sentence. Write it in.
1. I (a) going to buy a new jacket. 5. He going to meet us there?
2. We’re going leave at three o’clock. 6. When are you going have lunch?
3. Maggie is to get a job in the college. 7. I think it going to snow tonight.
4. They’re going home after school. 8. Are Jemima and Hugo to work in an office?
35 Review of units 31 to 34

Grammar

1 What are they doing? Look at the pictures and write sentences.

2 Write the sentences in exercise 1 in the negative form.

3 Write sentences about your plans. Use the present continuous of go, have or play.

4 Look at the diary again. Complete the questions.

1 What are you doing on Monday?
   I’m playing tennis.

2 Who?
   Jules.

3 What?
   I’m going to the beach.

4 Where?
   We’re going to the library.

5 When?
   I’m seeing him on Friday.

6 Who?
   Nicky.

7 What?
   I’m having lunch with my family.
What are they going to do? Write sentences.

1. I read my emails. I'm going to read my emails.
2. I phone my mum.
3. He have a piano lesson.
4. She study in the library.
5. We play tennis.
6. They go shopping.

Pronunciation: contractions

Listen to six sentences. How many words do you hear? Contracted forms (I'm, aren't, isn't) count as one word.

1. 3 4
2. 5
3. 6

Vocabulary

Complete with have or play.

1. play the piano
2. tennis with somebody
3. lunch with somebody
4. a shower
5. basketball
6. dinner with somebody
7. the guitar
8. chess
9. a great time

Complete the conversation with the phrases in the box.

Are you free on Saturday evening?
Can I call you back? Is it any good?
It's excellent.

John: I'm not sure. Why?
Clive: We're going to the cinema. We're going to see Brain Dead 2.
John: 2
Clive: 3
John: I think I'm free. 4
Clive: Sure.

Match 1–6 to a–f to complete her plans.

1. First of all, she's going to study  c
2. Then she's going to live in  
3. In Paris she's going to work  
4. She's going to stay with  
5. After that, she's going to travel  
6. Then she's going to come  

a. a French family.
b. around Australia.
c. French for six months.
d. home.
e. in a bank.
f. Paris for a year.

Listen again

Listen and complete the conversation.

A: What 1 Friday?
B: I 2 anything. Why?
A: We 3 cinema.
   Would you like to come?
B: Yes, please. What 4 seeing?
A: On the Beach 2. It 5 o'clock.
Hi Rona

Sorry, I wasn’t at home on Saturday but I was busy. It was my sister’s birthday so my family were at her house. It was a great party! How was your weekend? Can we meet tomorrow?

Best wishes
Sam

Presentation

Use was/were to talk about the past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Affirmative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / He / She / It</th>
<th>was busy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You / We / They</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / He / She / It</th>
<th>wasn’t at home on Saturday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You / We / They</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was</th>
<th>I / he / she / it at the party?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>you / we / they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I / he / she / it was.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you / we / they were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>I / he / she / it wasn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you / we / they weren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key vocabulary

Time references: yesterday, last night, on Saturday, last year, in 1999
Special days: birthday, party, wedding, anniversary

Exercises

1 Read the email. Choose the correct forms.

Hello Sam

I was/were busy on Sunday. It was/were my parents’ 25th wedding anniversary. My brothers and sisters were all at their house for the party. It was/were great fun!

How was/were your sister’s birthday? Was/Were there many people at her party?

Can you meet me at five tomorrow?

Rona
2 Read about George’s parents and Yukio’s twin brothers. Are sentences 1–8 true (T) or false (F)?

My father and mother were born in 1957. He was from the USA but they were at Oxford University in England and their wedding was in England. Last year was their 25th wedding anniversary.

My brothers were born on 25th October, 1989. They were both at school at the same time but they weren’t at the same university. Last week they were both twenty-one years old. There was a big party at our house for them.

1 George’s parents were born in the same year. ___________
2 They were from the USA. ___________
3 His mother was at Oxford University. ___________
4 Their wedding was last year. ___________
5 Yukio’s brothers were born on the same day. ___________
6 They weren’t at the same school. ___________
7 Their twenty-first birthday was last week. ___________
8 It wasn’t a big party. ___________

3 Complete the conversations with was, were, wasn’t or weren’t. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: Hello, Nancy. How 1 your weekend?
B: Great! Mike and I 2 in New York.
A: That’s amazing!
B: It 3 my birthday.
A: Happy Birthday!

Conversation 2
C: 4 James here this morning?
D: No, he 5 .
C: Where 6 he?
D: I think he 7 in a meeting with Sue and Rona. They 8 in Sue’s office.
C: No, they 9 because I was with Sue in her office all morning!

Conversation 3
E: How 10 your sister’s wedding?
F: Really good!
E: 11 it big?
F: No, there 12 many people, just family and good friends.
When I was a child...

Presentation

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>park.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>some</td>
<td></td>
<td>houses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td>any</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes/No questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was</th>
<th>there</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>park?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>houses?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

Yes, there was/were.  No, there wasn’t/weren’t.

**Key vocabulary**

Places in town: park, shop, café, road, cinema, pedestrian crossing, playground, bridge, skyscraper

Location: in front, behind, on the left/right, near here, next to, in the middle, across
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with there was, there were, there wasn’t or there weren’t.

1 There was ______ a cinema next to the post office.

2 When I was a boy, ______ three houses here. Now it’s an office block.

3 A: Was there a busy road here?
   B: No, ______. It was quiet.

4 ______ a shop but there was a café.

5 A: Were there houses or skyscrapers?
   B: When I was here two years ago, I think ______ some skyscrapers.

6 A: Were there any trees next to the pond?
   B: No, ______.

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

Two years ago

Now

1 Was there a road here?
2 Was there a market in the square?
3 Was there a café next to the bank?
4 Were there any shops on the left?
5 Were there two restaurants on the right?
6 Was there a pedestrian crossing?
7 Was there an Indian restaurant?

Yes, there was.

No, there wasn’t. There were cars.

8 Was there a shop on the corner? No, ______.

3 Match 1-8 to a–h.

1 Was there a café
2 When I was a student, there
3 Last year there were
4 Two years ago, I
5 When I was child,
6 Were there
7 Was
8 Was there a shop on the corner? No,

a there was a playground in the park.
b ______ on the left?
c there wasn’t.
d think there was a bank next to the cinema.
e wasn’t a library here.
f two restaurants on the right.
g there a car park here?
h two bridges across the river?
Presentation

Use the modal verb *could* to describe ability in the past.

- He could play the organ very well.
- He couldn’t hear his music.
- Could he play the organ?

**TIP** You often use *How well/far...?* with *could*:

- *How well could he play the guitar? Very well.*
- *How far could he run? About twenty kilometres.*

**Key vocabulary** Occupations: composer, boxer, writer, scientist, painter, singer

**Exercises**

1. Complete the texts with *could* or *couldn’t*.

   **Muhammad Ali**
   
   (1942–) **Boxer**
   
   When he was at school, Muhammad Ali 1 couldn’t read very well but he 2 move very fast!

   **Helen Keller**
   
   (1880–1968) **Writer**
   
   When she was a child, she 3 see or hear but when she was an adult she 4 speak and write books.
Albert Einstein
(1879–1955) Scientist
When he was a child, he 5 speak well but he was the best student in the class.

Pablo Picasso
(1881–1973) Painter
His father was an art teacher but when Picasso was thirteen he 6 paint better than his father. He was born in Spain but he 7 also speak French.

Edith Piaf
(1915–1963) Singer
Between the ages of three and seven, Edith 8 see and from eight to fourteen she 9 hear. But when she was an adult she 10 sing and was famous around the world.

1.46 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How well could you play the piano?</th>
<th>How far could you run?</th>
<th>Could you speak Chinese?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I couldn’t play tennis.</td>
<td>Could your father speak Chinese?</td>
<td>What could he play?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conversation 1
A: 1 Could you speak Chinese when you were a child?
B: Yes, I could. My mother was Chinese and my father was English.
A: 2
B: No, he couldn’t, but my mother could speak English.

Conversation 2
C: 3 when you were a child?
D: Not very well, but I could play the violin. My father was a music teacher.
C: 4
D: The piano, the violin and the saxophone, but he couldn’t play the guitar.

Conversation 3
E: Do you run nowadays?
F: No, but when I was at school I could run a long way.
E: 5
F: A half marathon. But I couldn’t swim very well. Could you?
E: Yes, I could, but 6
39 Could ...? and Would you like ...?  
(polite requests and offers)

**Presentation**

Use Could If/you + verb ...? for polite requests and Would you like + to -infinitive ...? for polite offers.

- Could I have your name please?  
- Could you spell that?  
- Would you like to leave a message?

You can also use Can ...? for requests but Could ...? is more polite and formal.

**Tip** Don't say Could I have your name? Would you like to leave a message?

Responses to requests and offers: Sure. / Yes ... / Thanks very much. / Certainly. / Thanks, but ...

**Tip** Don't say No, I wouldn't: No, you couldn't. It isn't polite.

**Key vocabulary** Verbs: call, borrow, email, give, help, leave, lend, order, see, speak (to), take, tell (me/her), watch

**Exercises**

1 🎓 1.47 Complete the conversations with could or would. Then listen and check.

**Conversation 1**

A: Hello. 1. _______ Could _______. I speak to Mr Gates, please?
B: I'm sorry, he's out. 2. ______________ you like to leave a message?
A: Thanks. 3. ______________ he email the photographs to me?
B: Sure. 4. ______________ I have your name, please?
A: Yes, it's Carrie Aitken. 3. ______________ you give him my email address?
B: Of course.
A: It's carrie@morris.com.
Conversation 2
C: Good afternoon.  
D: Yes, please.  
C: Certainly.  
D: I’d like some water and ... I see the wine menu, please?  
C: Of course.

Conversation 3
E: What’s this DVD?  
F: It’s a film about a family in America. They buy a house with ghosts in! ... you like to borrow it?  
E: Yes, it sounds great. What about this one with Tom Cruise? ... I watch it, too?  
F: Sure, but ... I have them back by Friday?

Conversation 4
G: ... you look at my car, please?  
H: Yes, sure. The engine doesn’t sound good. ... you leave it here until tomorrow?  
G: OK. See you later.  
H: One moment! ... you like to give me the keys?  
G: Sorry, I nearly forgot!

2 Put the pronouns in the box into the sentences.

him + you them we me

1. Could ... leave a message?
2. Would like to buy something, madam?
3. Could you give your number again, please? I can’t find it.
4. Harry is out. Would you like to call you later?
5. I’d like some soup and she’d like a salad. And could see the wine menu, please?
6. You can borrow the films but could I have back by the weekend?

3 Write requests and offers.

1. would / like me / help you  
   Would you like me to help you?
2. could / leave / message  
3. could / lend / me / DVD  
4. would / like / speak / Marc  
5. could / borrow / pen  
6. could / spell / name  
7. would / like / something / drink  
8. would / like / borrow / car  
9. could / lend / mobile phone  
10. would / like / see / menu
Review of units 36 to 39

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

- could
- couldn’t
- was
- wasn’t
- were
- weren’t

I could

2 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I was born in
2 I could read at the age of
3 There were children in my mother’s family.
4 When I was a child I couldn’t
but I can now

3 Put the conversation in order.

D Yes, it’s 0770 768 3322.
D Yes, please. Could you tell him Nigella
D Hello. Could I speak to Raymond, please
D So that’s Nigella on 0770 768 3322.
D Sure. Could I have your number?
D That’s right. Thanks.
D I’m sorry, he’s out. Would you like to leave a message?

4 Correct the sentences.

1 They weren’t at the party.
   They weren’t at the party.

2 Sorry, I can’t come yesterday.

3 I was born in Brazil.

4 There was houses on the left.

5 Would you like a sit here?

6 Could I order some ice cream?

7 Were they born in Italy?

8 Could you say him I called?

9 Could I lend your car?
Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of was

Listen to the pronunciation of was and wasn’t in these sentences.

/waz/
He was here yesterday.
/waz/ /woz/
Was he here yesterday? Yes, he was.
/woznt/
She wasn’t at home.

Now listen to five sentences and tick the pronunciation you hear.

1 /waz/ /woz/ ✓ /woznt/
2 /waz/ /woz/ /woznt/
3 /waz/ /woz/ /woznt/
4 /waz/ /woz/ /woznt/
5 /waz/ /woz/ /woznt/

Read about a town and write the places on the map.

There was a supermarket on the left of the restaurant. The bus station was next to the supermarket. The bank was between the bus station and the cinema. The café was on the right of the cinema and on the left of the post office. There was a train station between the restaurant and the post office.

Vocabulary

7 Circle the word that is different.
1 sister box father grandmother
2 cinema café skyscraper car
3 singer piano violin saxophone
4 composer bridge writer painter
5 today birthday wedding anniversary

8 Complete the questions, requests and offers with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>order</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>spell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Would you like to _________ dinner?
2 Would you like to __________ a message?
3 A: Could I __________ your name, please?
   B: Yes, it’s Sarah Hunt.
4 A: Could you __________ your name?
   B: Yes, it’s S-O-P-H-I-E.
5 A: Could you __________ me this book?
   B: OK, but can I have it back by Friday?
6 A: Could I __________ to Rona, please?
7 A: How far can he __________?
   B: About 20 kilometres.
8 A: Would you like to __________ anything?
   B: Yes, please. I’d like two kilos of apples.

Listen again

9 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1 Nancy was in New York at the weekend. T
2 It was her wedding anniversary. 
3 James wasn’t here in the morning.
4 Sue and Rona were with James.
5 It was a big wedding.
6 There weren’t any family or friends.
41 Past simple (regular verbs)

Presentation

Use the past simple to talk about finished actions and events.

Regular verbs

Add -ed to regular verbs to form the past simple: started, finished.

I was born in 1980. When I finished school, I travelled around the world and visited China, Australia and parts of South America. In 1999, I started college and studied medicine for six years. After I graduated from college, I worked in Africa for a year and then I started my job at the hospital in 2007.

Past simple (regular verbs): key spelling rules

- Two syllable verbs ending with -y: study → studied (not studied)
- Verbs ending with -e: live → lived
- Many verbs ending in vowel + consonant (not -w, -x or -y) double the consonant: travel → travelled, stop → stopped (not traveled, stopped)

See page 234: Spelling rules

Pronunciation

With verbs ending with a /t/ or /d/ sound (e.g. start, need, graduate), -ed adds an extra syllable: start = one syllable, started = two syllables (start / ed).

Key vocabulary: Regular verbs: finish, graduate, join, live, qualify, start, stop, study, travel, visit, walk, work

Time references: in 1999, last night/month/year, two years ago, for three years, yesterday, this morning, on Monday, then
Exercises

1 Read the CV. Are sentences 1–6 true (T) or false (F)?

CV
1982: Born
1987–2000: School
2001–2005: University
2005–present: Accountancy firm

1 He started work in 2006. ❌
2 He finished school in 2000. ✓
3 He studied at university for two years. ✓
4 He started school in 1987. ❌
5 He was born in 1982. ✓
6 He joined an accountancy firm in 2005. ❌

2 Which are correct? Correct the spelling mistakes.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. studied</td>
<td>studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tried</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. visited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. played</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. graduated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. stoped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. traveled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. qualifyed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences with the past simple of the verbs.

1. I _______ (start) this job four years ago.
2. They _______ (finish) work at nine o’clock last night.
3. Richard _______ (graduate) from Oxford University last month.
4. We _______ (visit) the Taj Mahal in India last year.
5. I _______ (work) for Microsoft for three years.
6. She _______ (travel) home by taxi.
7. They _______ (walk) home yesterday.
8. Sally _______ (stop) work at lunchtime yesterday.
9. My family _______ (live) in Canada for two years.
10. We _______ (study) English for two hours this morning.

4 Read about Nicole and complete the text. Then listen and check.

1999 Finish school
1999 Start university
2003 Graduate with Spanish degree
2003–4 Travel around South America with friend
2004–5 Study for teaching certificate / Qualify in 2005
2005 Join private language school

I 1 _______ school in 1999 and I 2 _______ university in the same year. After I 3 _______ from university with a degree in Spanish, I 4 _______ around South America with a friend for nearly a year. After that I 5 _______ for a certificate in teaching and 6 _______ in 2005. Finally I 7 _______ a private language school where I still teach Spanish today.
Past simple (irregular verbs)

Hi Safi
We’re having a great time. We got to the hotel on Saturday and went straight to the beach. We sat there all day and swam in the sea. On Sunday we took a taxi to the local market and bought some delicious bread and cheese. We ate our lunch in the park outside the palace. Then we did some sightseeing in the afternoon. We’re back on the beach today!
Love
Anna

Presentation

Irregular verbs
Some verbs are irregular. They do not add -ed: go → went (not goed), make → made (not maked).
See page 235: Irregular verbs

Key vocabulary Collocations (verb + noun): do homework, go sightseeing / do some sightseeing, get up, go shopping / do some shopping, make lunch, take a taxi

Exercises

1 Match the past simple form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bought</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>see</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Complete the sentences with the past simple of the verbs.

1 We _______ (eat) fish at a restaurant last night.
2 I _______ (go) to Spain on holiday last summer.
3 She _______ (buy) a new suit for work at the weekend.
4 I _______ (have) a bicycle when I was a child.
5 They _______ (do) their homework last night.
6 We _______ (swim) in the pool in the park on Sunday.
7 You _______ (take) a taxi to the station last week.
8 She _______ (make) lunch for us yesterday.
9 He _______ (get) up late this morning.
10 I _______ (sit) in the sun all afternoon.
11 We _______ (give) her a camera for her birthday.
12 They _______ (see) some horses on the beach this morning.

3 Complete the conversation with the past simple of the verbs in the box.
Then listen and check.

A: How was your holiday?
B: Great! We _______ (go) up late every day and _______ (sit) in the hotel pool before breakfast.

A: How was the food at the hotel?
B: Not bad, but we usually _______ (go) to one of the local restaurants. We _______ (eat) some delicious fish dishes.

A: So, were you near the coast?
B: Yes, we were. We _______ (take) the hotel bus down to the sea and _______ (swim) on the beach in the afternoon.

A: Were there many places to visit?
B: Mark _______ (join) sightseeing but I wasn't interested. I _______ (buy) some shopping on the last day. Look! I _______ (take) this beautiful bracelet at a local market.

4 Regular or irregular verbs? Correct the mistakes.

1 maked _______ made 7 walked _______ 13 travelled
2 took _______ ✓ 8 eated _______ 14 joined
3 visited _______ 9 sitted _______ 15 tryed
4 goed _______ 10 swimmmed _______ 16 stoped
5 studied _______ 11 haved _______ 17 finnished
6 buyed _______ 12 took _______ 18 gived
43 did/didn’t (negative and questions)

A: Did you leave home when you were eighteen?
B: Yes, I did. Did you?
A: No, I didn’t. I was twenty-four. That’s normal in my country.

C: Did you go to university?
D: No, I didn’t. I started work after school and then I met my first husband.
C: Did you have any children?
D: No, we didn’t and we got divorced a year later. Then I got married to Roger. We celebrated our twentieth anniversary yesterday.
C: Congratulations!

Presentation

Use didn’t for negative sentences in the past simple.
Use Did ...? for questions in the past simple.
Use did or didn’t for short answers.

Negative

| I / You / He / She / We / They | didn’t | go | to university. |

**TIP** Say They didn’t get married. (don’t say They didn’t got married.)

Questions

| Did | I / you / he / she / we / they | go | to university? |

**TIP** Say Did you work there? (don’t say Did you worked there?)

Short answers

Yes, I / you / he / she / we / they did.  No, I / you / he / she / we / they didn’t.

**Key vocabulary**  Life events: leave school, start work, leave home, get married/divorced, have children, celebrate an anniversary/a birthday
People in your life: partner (a husband/wife)
Exercises

1 Write a past simple sentence for each picture 1–8. Use the phrases in the box.

get divorced  get married  leave school
meet new partner  not get married again  not go to university
not have any children  start work in an office

1 She left school in 1995.
2 She didn’t go to university.
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...

2 Complete the questions and answers with did or didn’t.

1 A: Did you study English at school?
   B: No, I ...
2 A: Did you get married?
   B: Yes, I ... I got married to Bill.
3 A: Did you have children?
   B: Yes, we had two. Susie is eight and Stella is five.
4 A: Did Bill leave home before university?
   B: No, he ... He left home after university.

3 Write the questions for these answers. Then listen and check.

1 A: Did you get married?
2 A: Did you meet at university?
   B: No, I didn’t. I met Bill after university.
3 A: Did you have any children?
   B: Yes, I had a girl. Michelle is three.
4 A: Did you do last night?
   B: No, I didn’t. I’m doing my homework now.
5 A: Did you go to the airport?
   B: No, I took a taxi. It’s faster than the bus.
6 A: Did you go to Spain on holiday?
   B: No, we didn’t. We went to France.
7 A: Did you get up late this morning?
   B: No, I didn’t. I got up early.
Past simple questions
Object and subject questions

Igor: I'd like to do a language course in England next summer.
Saskia: Good idea! I did a course in Brighton last summer.
Igor: Where did you study?
Saskia: I studied at the Seafront School of English.
Igor: Who organised your accommodation?
Saskia: Someone at the language school. I stayed with an English family. They were really nice.
Igor: How were the meals?
Saskia: Not bad actually. Breakfast was delicious.

Presentation

Use past simple questions to ask about finished events in the past:
Where did you study?
Who organised your accommodation?
How were the meals?

Object questions
You often ask questions in the past simple with did. You want information about the object of a sentence.

Where did you study?
I studied at the Seafront School of English.

Subject questions
You can also ask questions about the subject of the sentence. Do not use did with a subject question.

Who organised your accommodation?
Someone at the language school organised my accommodation.

Tip: Remember not to use did with was/were questions (see Unit 36). Say How were the meals? (don't say How did the meals be?)
1 Put the words in order to make questions.

1. Where did you stay?
2. Who stayed there?
3. What did you do yesterday?
4. Who made the sandwich?
5. How many people did you invite to the party?
6. What plans changed your plans?
7. What time did the TV programme start?

2 Match the responses a–g to the questions 1–7 in exercise 1.

a. I didn’t go because the weather was bad.
c. Eight o’clock.
d. I played tennis with Rafa.
e. At the Belvedere Hotel.
f. About thirty people.
g. My mother made it.

3 Are questions 1–7 in exercise 1 subject or object questions? Write S or O.

1. S
2. S
3. O
4. S
5. S
6. S
7. S

4 Write questions for these answers. Then listen and check.

1 A: When did she leave home?
   B: She left home in 2006.
2 A: What
   B: They studied Biology at university.
3 A: Who
   B: Martin and Rachel studied Biology at university.
4 A: When
   B: I started my job five years ago.
5 A: What
   B: The weather changed my plans. It was raining.
6 A: Where
   B: I met Sheila in Australia.
7 A: Why
   B: I didn’t like my boss so I left my job.
8 A: Who
   B: My mother lived in this house.
9 A: How long
   B: We travelled in Patagonia for six months.
Review of units 41 to 44

Grammar

1. Write the sentences in the past simple.
   1. I ate breakfast at seven o'clock.
   2. They go on Tuesday.
   3. We don't have time for lunch.
   4. Who lives here?
   5. Do you know her?
   6. Why do you walk to work?
   7. Sorry, I'm not at home.
   8. How far do you swim?

2. Correct the mistakes.
   1. Did you liked Spain?
   2. When did you lived there?
   3. Who did wrote that book?
   4. I studied in Bologna for a year.
   5. We didn't went to the cinema last night.
   6. Why you leave university early?
   7. Did you visited the Eiffel Tower?
   8. She maked a delicious pasta dish.
   9. When you get divorced?

3. Complete the timeline with the phrases in the box.

   in 1990   last month
   last week   last year   this morning
   two weeks ago   yesterday

   two minutes ago
   1
   2
   3
   4
   5
   6
   7

4. Write the past simple of the verbs.
   1. do  
   2. leave
   3. get
   4. celebrate
   5. go
   6. take
   7. make
   8. graduate
   9. stop
   10. travel
Complete the sentences with the past simple verbs from exercise 4.

1. Suzy and Jane ___________ shopping for new shoes yesterday.
3. Tom and Natalie ___________ their twentieth wedding anniversary last month.
4. David ___________ his homework and then he watched a DVD.
5. Petra ___________ around Europe for six months last year.
6. Mel ___________ smoking three weeks ago.
7. Julia ___________ from university with a degree in Physics last June.
8. I ___________ a taxi to the restaurant because it was raining.
10. Jenny ___________ dinner but she didn’t eat anything.

Number the events in order.

a. We joined the same company after university.
b. I left school in 1998.
c. I met my husband in my final year at university.
d. We had our first child last year.
e. I started university straight after.
f. I was born three years later.
g. My parents met in 1977.
h. They got married three years later.

Listen again

8. Listen and choose the correct answers.

1. Did they get up late every day?
   a. Yes, they did. ✓
   b. No, they didn’t.
   c. Yes, they got.

2. Did they swim in the pool after breakfast?
   a. Yes, they did.
   b. No, they didn’t.
   c. No, they swam.

3. Was the fish good at the local restaurants?
   a. Yes, it was.
   b. No, it wasn’t.
   c. Yes, they were.

4. Were they near the coast?
   a. Yes, they were.
   b. No, it wasn’t.
   c. No, they weren’t.

5. Did they walk to the beach?
   a. Yes, they walked.
   b. No, they didn’t.
   c. No, they did take the bus.

6. Did she do some sightseeing?
   a. Yes, Mark did.
   b. Yes, she did.
   c. No, she didn’t.

7. When did she go shopping?
   a. Yes, she did.
   b. On the last day.
   c. No, she didn’t.

8. What did she buy?
   a. Yes, she did.
   b. Yes, she bought.
   c. A bracelet.
Presentation

Use *must* and *mustn't* to talk about obligation and prohibition.

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You / He / She / It / We / They</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>mustn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be home at ten.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Must* and *mustn't* are modal verbs. This means:

- No third person *s*
  
  Say *He must go.* (don’t say *He musts go.*)

- No auxiliary *do*
  
  Say *I mustn’t go.* (don’t say *I don’t must go.*)

- No past tense
  
  (don’t say *I musted go.*)

- No *to* before the verb
  
  Say *They must go.* (don’t say *They must to go.*)

**Exercises**

1 Read the sentences. Who is speaking: your boss, your doctor, your parents or a police officer?

1. You must be home by eleven. ______ parents ______
2. You must eat more vegetables. ______
3. You mustn’t smoke in the office. ______
4. You must take more exercise. ______
5. You mustn’t use your mobile when you’re driving. ______
6. You must study for your exam. ______
7. You must visit your grandmother on Sunday. ______
8. You must finish those emails by five o’clock. ______

Bella: Bye, Dad.
Dad: Bye, Bella. And don’t forget – you must be home by ten-thirty.
Dad: No, I’m not. You mustn’t be late. Bye, Bella.
Bella: But …
Read the imperatives. Write sentences with must or mustn’t.

1. Don’t use your mobile here! You mustn’t use your mobile here.
2. Eat more fruit!
3. Don’t drink the water here!
4. Park on the left!
5. Visit your grandparents!
6. Don’t take photographs here!
7. Don’t talk in class!
8. Turn your mobile off!
9. Phone me when you arrive!
10. Don’t phone after ten o’clock!

Complete the conversations with must or mustn’t. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: What did the doctor say?
B: He says I 1 must eat more fruit and vegetables, I 2 smoke, I 3 drink more water and I 4 drink wine.
A: You’re joking!

Conversation 2
C: What did the teacher say?
D: He says we 5 do more homework, we 6 talk in class and we 7 study for the exam!
C: Oh, no!

Conversation 3
E: What did your boss say?
F: He says I 8 be late, I 9 park in his parking place and I 10 finish all those emails.
E: Oh.

Conversation 4
G: What did the police officer say?
H: He says I 11 drive faster than 50 kilometres an hour in the town centre and I 12 obey the traffic lights. Oh, and I 13 pay £250 because I drove through that red light.
G: Oh, no!

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1. Rachel must leave at six. Rachel must leave at six.
2. You don’t must do that!
3. We must to drive on the left in the UK.
4. She doesn’t must be late for her interview.
5. I musts get up at six every day.
6. They must to ask their parents.
Presentation

Use *have to*, *must* and *mustn’t* to talk about obligation. Use *don’t have to* to say that there is no obligation to do something.

- *don’t have to* doesn’t mean the same as *mustn’t*
  
  You *don’t have to do it.* = It isn’t necessary.
  
  You *mustn’t do it* = Don’t do it!

- *have got to* means the same as *have to*
  
  You’ve got to wash your hands. = You *have to wash your hands.* (have got to is informal.)

**TIP** There isn’t much difference between *have to* and *must*. You can use *must* to talk about personal obligations:

I *must* lose some weight.

*Have to* is more impersonal:

Police officers *have to wear a uniform.*

### Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have to</td>
<td>don’t have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td>wear a uniform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>has to</td>
<td>doesn’t have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you / we / they</td>
<td>1 / you / we / they do.</td>
<td>I / you / we / they don’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / she</td>
<td>he / she does.</td>
<td>he / she doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Short answers

Yes, | 1 / you / we / they do. | 1 / you / we / they don’t. |
No, | he / she doesn’t. | he / she doesn’t. |

---

**Key vocabulary**

- **Work**: clean the kitchen, clear the table, cook the food, job, job description, rules, serve the customers, tidy the clothes, wear a uniform
- **Clothes**: shirt, trousers, uniform
Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms.
1 Shop assistants mustn't be polite to customers.
2 Teachers have to / don't have to wear a uniform.
3 Nurses must / don't have to wash their hands.
4 Engineers have to / don't have to get a special qualification.
5 Taxi drivers in the UK don't have to / mustn't drive on the right.
6 Police officers have to / mustn't wear a uniform.
7 Waiters have to / don't have to cook the food.
8 Journalists have to / don't have to ask questions.

2 Complete the conversations about jobs with do, does, have to, has to or mustn't. Then listen and check. What are the jobs in conversations 1 and 2?

Conversation 1
A: What time do you start work?
B: I have to be there at nine o'clock. I mustn't be late.
A: Do you wear a uniform?
B: Yes, I do.
A: What jobs do you do?
B: I clean the restaurant and serve the customers.

Conversation 2
C: Does Emily like her new job?
D: Yes, because she doesn't get up early! The shop doesn't open until ten.
C: Does she serve the customers?
D: Yes, she does. And she tidy the clothes.
C: Can she smoke?
D: No, she mustn't smoke in the shop so she mustn't smoke on the street.

3 Look at the rules and the job descriptions. Write sentences about Paolo and Macy. Use has to, doesn't have to or mustn't.

food Paolo has to cook the food.
      Macy doesn't have to cook the food.
smoke Paolo and Macy
tables Paolo
      Macy
uniform Paolo and Macy
late Paolo and Macy
customers Paolo
      Macy

RULES
- Work starts at nine – don't be late
- No smoking
- Wear a uniform

JOB DESCRIPTIONS
Paolo: Cook the food
      Macy: Clear the tables, serve the customers
**Presentation**

*Use should for strong advice.*

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Should</th>
<th>shouldn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / You / He / She / It / We / They</td>
<td>buy that dress.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes/No questions**

Should I buy that dress?

**Short answers**

Yes, you should.  
No, you shouldn't.

**Wh- questions**

What should I do?

**Key vocabulary** Adjectives: awful, beautiful, great, horrible, terrible, terrific, ugly

**Exercises**

1. Comment on the advice. Use That's true / not true and shouldn't.

   1. You should smoke.  
   2. You should take exercise.  
   3. You should eat healthy food.  
   4. You should drink a lot of coffee.  
   5. You should work twelve hours a day.  
   6. You shouldn't go on holiday.
Give advice. Use should / shouldn't buy and it or them.

1. That jacket's terrific. ____________________________
   You should buy it.

2. Those trousers are awful. ____________________________
   They don't should be that much.

3. These shoes are great. ____________________________

4. That shirt is horrible. ____________________________

5. This dress is beautiful. ____________________________

6. Those ties are ugly. ____________________________

Complete the conversation with should or shouldn't. Then listen and check.

Joe: You work too hard. You should work less.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: You should go on holiday.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: And you should drink all that coffee.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: And you smoke? You should stop now.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: And you look terrible! You should take more exercise.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: And doughnuts! You should eat healthier food.
Mark: Yes, but ...
Joe: Yes, but what?
Mark: Oh, nothing.

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1. I think you should to buy those shoes. ____________________________
2. They don't should pay that much money! ____________________________
3. Rita shoulds ask me first. ____________________________
4. Do we should leave now or later? ____________________________
5. Gerald should to do more exercise. ____________________________
6. What shoulds he do about the problem? ____________________________
Hi Rolf,
Sorry I couldn’t be at your party last night. 😞 I had to study for the Maths exam. 😣
The good news is that my dad said I didn’t have to do my English homework – the teacher’s ill!!! 😊
See you at the weekend?
Maria

Presentation

Had to is the past of have to.

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You / He / She / It / We / They</th>
<th>had to</th>
<th>study for the Maths exam.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>didn’t have to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

Did you have to study for the Maths exam?

Short answers

Yes, I did. | No, I didn’t.

Tip: Say I didn’t have to do it. (don’t say I hadn’t to do it.)
Say Did you have to do it? (don’t say Had you to do it?)

Key vocabulary

Education: do homework, English, French, Geography, Maths, Music, Science, study for an exam

Exercises

1 Tony and Lisa were at school five years ago. What did they have to study? Use had to or didn’t have to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Tony</th>
<th>Lisa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>x=4y-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>Bonjour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Tony + Lisa / Maths
They had to study Maths.

2 Lisa / French

3 Tony / French

4 Tony + Lisa / Geography

5 Tony + Lisa / Science
2 Last year, Simon was a soldier. Match the sentences to the pictures.

1  He had to be fit. ☐
2  He had to call the officers ‘sir’. ☐
3  He had to clean the floor. ☐
4  He had to get up early. ☐
5  He had to type letters. ☐
6  He had to wear a uniform. ☐

a 

b 

c 

3 Simon is talking to David, a friend, about being a soldier. Complete the conversation with did, didn’t, have to or had to. Then listen and check.

David: 1 Did you 2 have to 3 get up early?
Simon: Yes, I 4 . We all 5 get up at half past five. And I 6 clean the floor every morning.
David: 6 you 7 clean the toilets?
Simon: No, I 8 . But I 9 type a lot of letters.
David: 10 you 11 call the officers ‘sir’?
David: Was there a lot of sport?
Simon: Yes, there was. We 14 be very fit.

4 Write past simple questions. Use have to.

1  he / do that? Did he have to do that?
2  Mike and Lelia / stay late? ____________________________
3  what time / you / get up? ____________________________
4  you / clean the house today? ____________________________
5  why / we / pay for the ticket? ____________________________
6  she / study French at school? ____________________________
Review of units 46 to 49

Grammar

1. Write sentences with *mustn’t*.

   1. *You mustn’t smoke.*

2. Read what the boss says to Josh. Write what Josh says to his friend. Use *have to*, *don’t have to* or *mustn’t*.

   1. *Work starts at eight o’clock.*
      *I have to start work at eight o’clock.*

   2. *Don’t park in my parking space.*
      *I mustn’t park in the boss’s parking space.*

   3. *Don’t be late.*

   4. *Learn the rules.*

   5. *There’s no uniform.*

   6. *You must wear a jacket and tie.*

   7. *It isn’t necessary to call me ‘sir’.*

   8. *It isn’t your job to make coffee.*

3. Delia would like to be healthier. Look at her notes and write what she says with *should* or *shouldn’t*.

   1. *I shouldn’t drink coffee.*

   2.

   3.

   4.

   5.

   6.

   1. *drink coffee*

   2. *drink water*

   3. *eat doughnuts*

   4. *do exercise*

   5. *eat vegetables*

   6. *drink wine*
4 Complete the conversation with *did, didn’t, have to or had to.*

A: Monday was terrible! I 1 **had to**

start work at eight. I 2 **had to**

phone fifty people …

B: **3** … you 4 **had to**

clean the toilets?

A: No, I 5 **hadn’t**

. B: Well, I 6 **had to**

clean the toilets.

A: That’s awful.

B: Yes, it was. I 7 **had to**

be at work

at six and I finished late.

A: You’re joking!

B: No, I’m not.

A: But you 8 **must**

9 **had to**

phone fifty people.

B: That’s true.

Pronunciation: *n’t*

5 **1.60** Listen and circle the form you hear.

1 You must /mustn’t* go.

2 He should / shouldn’t eat healthy food.

3 You do / don’t have to wear a uniform.

4 I could / couldn’t play the piano.

5 We should / shouldn’t call.

6 We must / mustn’t* leave at nine.

Vocabulary

6 Circle the word that is different.

1 beautiful great terrific *awful*

2 boss shirt trousers uniform

3 Maths Geography homework Science

4 great horrible awful ugly

5 clean serve job cook

7 Complete the verbs with vowels (*a, e, i, o, u*).

8 **1.61** Listen and put the lines from the conversation in order.

- And you look terrible! You should take more exercise.
- And you shouldn’t drink all that coffee.
- And you smoke? You should stop now.
- You work too hard. You should work less.
- Yes, but what?
- You should go on holiday.
- And doughnuts! You should eat healthier food.
Boy: Dad, I'm going to the cinema with Jordi. Can I have £20?
Dad: Hmm. Have you cleaned the car?
Boy: Yes, I have.
Dad: Have you tidied your room?
Boy: Yes, I have.
Dad: Well, OK then.

**Presentation**

Use the present perfect to talk about a past action which has a present result.

\[
\text{I've cleaned the car.} = \text{The car is clean now.} \\
\text{I haven't cleaned the car.} = \text{The car is dirty now.}
\]

You don’t say exactly when it happened. (don’t say \textbf{I have cleaned the car yesterday}.)

Form the present perfect with \textit{have/has + past participle}.

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaned</td>
<td>not cleaned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidied</td>
<td>not tidied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaned</td>
<td>not cleaned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidied</td>
<td>not tidied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past participle**

- Regular past participles end in \textit{-ed}:
  - \textit{borrow} \rightarrow \textit{borrowed}.
- Many verbs have irregular past participles:
  - \textit{buy} \rightarrow \textit{bought}, \textit{break} \rightarrow \textit{broken}.

See page 235: Irregular verbs

**Yes/No questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cleaned</td>
<td>not cleaned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidied</td>
<td>not tidied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaned the car?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidied your room?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{Yes,} & \text{I / you / we / they} & \text{have.} \\
\text{he / she} & \text{has.} \\
\hline
\text{No,} & \text{I / you / we / they} & \text{haven't.} \\
\text{he / she} & \text{hasn't.} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

**Key vocabulary**

- \textit{Daily events}: do the washing-up, comb your hair, clean your shoes, clean your teeth, have a shower, iron your clothes, tidy your desk
Write affirmative and negative sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. comb his hair
2. iron his shirt
3. clean his shoes

Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. I’ve cleaned my teeth.
2. She left her bag on the table.
3. We haven’t finished our homework.
4. They’ve had breakfast.
5. You haven’t done the washing-up.
6. He’s tidied his desk.
7. We’ve bought a new car.
8. He’s made lots of mistakes.

Write sentences using the verbs in brackets.

1. I can’t find my credit card. I’ve lost my credit card.
2. Julio’s got my dictionary. He’s borrowed my dictionary.
3. Christina’s wearing a new top. She’s bought a new top.
4. The car was moving. Now it isn’t. It’s stopped.
5. I dropped my phone and now it doesn’t work. It’s broken.

Complete the conversation with questions. Then listen and check.

Mother: Peter! It’s five to nine. Are you ready?
Peter: Yes, Mum.
Mother: 1. Have you cleaned your teeth?
Peter: Yes, of course I have.
Mother: 2. Have you had a shower?
Peter: Yes, Mum.
Mother: 3. Have you washed your hair?
Peter: Yes, I have.
Mother: 4. Have you cleaned your shoes?
Peter: Yes, I have.
Mother: No, you haven’t. They’re dirty. Oh, Peter ...
52 Present perfect with just, already and yet

A: Hi, Mum. I passed!
B: Oh, well done. Let me get your father ... Jack! It’s Susie on the phone. She’s just passed her driving test!
C: Are you going to tidy your room?
D: I’ve already tidied it!
E: Have you talked to Mark yet?
F: No, I haven’t.

Presentation

Just, yet and already are adverbs. They add extra meaning to the present perfect.

- *Just* shows that an action is very recent. Use just in affirmative sentences. It usually goes before the past participle: She’s just passed her driving test.

- *Yet* shows that something is expected. Use yet in negative sentences and yes/no questions. It usually goes at the end of the sentence: I haven’t decided yet. Have you decided yet?

- *Already* shows that something happened sooner than expected. Use already in affirmative sentences. It usually goes before the past participle: I’ve already tidied it.

Key vocabulary

Life events: have a baby, get married, graduate from university, move house, pass your driving test

Housework: clean the bathroom, do the shopping, do the washing-up, make dinner, make your bed, tidy the living room

Exercises

1 Write sentences with just. Use the present perfect and the phrases in the box.

get married graduate from university have a baby move house

1 They’ve just moved house.
2
3
4

114
Write questions with *yet*.

1. you / do the washing-up? — **Have you done the washing-up yet?**
2. he / make his bed?
3. they / clean the bathroom?
4. she / tidy the living room?
5. you / make dinner?
6. he / do the shopping?

Complete the sentences with *already* or *yet*.

1. They’re going to be here in ten minutes and I haven’t made dinner _yet_!
2. Have you tidied your room _already_?
3. I’ve _already_ done the washing-up.
4. You don’t have to tidy the living room: I’ve _already_ done it.
5. I’ve haven’t cleaned the bathroom and I haven’t made the beds _yet_.
6. The kitchen’s OK. I’ve _already_ cleaned it.

Tick (√) the things on the list that Nina has done this morning. Write when she’s going to do the other things.

I’ve already phoned Jack. I haven’t talked to Julia _yet_. I’m going to do that at two o’clock. I haven’t emailed Brad _yet_. I’m going to do that this afternoon. I’ve already texted Leo. I’ve already talked to Anthony.

1. phone Jack  ✓
2. talk to Julia _at two o’clock_
3. email Brad
4. text Leo
5. talk to Anthony

**2.03** Look at Martin’s list and write what he says. Use *going to* or the present perfect with *already* or *yet*. Then listen and check.

I haven’t phoned Angelina _yet_. I’m going to do that at four o’clock.

1. phone Angelina _at four o’clock_
2. phone Tom  ✓
3. talk to Kevin  ✓
4. email Sharon _this afternoon_
5. talk to Martin _after lunch_

1. phone Angelina _at four o’clock_
2. phone Tom  ✓
3. talk to Kevin  ✓
4. email Sharon _this afternoon_
5. talk to Martin _after lunch_
53 Present perfect with for and since
How long ...?

Presentation

Use the present perfect to talk about actions that started in the past and continue in the present.

I've lived in London for five years (and I live there now).

moved to London
five years ago  NOW

live in London

for and since

• Use for with the present perfect to show the duration of a present situation.
  My brother's a doctor. He became a doctor five years ago: He's been a doctor for five years.

• Use since with the present perfect to show the starting point of a present situation.

How long ...?

Use How long ...? with the present perfect to ask about the duration of a present situation.

How long have you lived there? For five years.

Key vocabulary Life events: become/be a (doctor), buy/have a car, get/be married, meet/know somebody, move to/live in a town, start/have your own business, start supporting/support a football team, make/have a million dollars
Complete the phrases with for or since.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>since</th>
<th>1972</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>I was fourteen years old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>four days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eleven o'clock</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>two hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer the questions about Sarah.

Sarah got married when she was 24. She's been married for four years. How old is she now? She's 28.

Her husband's name is Jeff. She met him at university when she was 21 years old. How long has she known him? For 5 years.

She became a teacher when she was 22. How long has she been a teacher? For 3 years.

Sarah and Jeff have lived in London for three years. How old was she when they moved to London? She was 25.

She's supported Chelsea FC since she moved to London. How long has she supported Chelsea FC? For 11 years.

She's got an old Volkswagen. She's had it for ten years. How old was she when she bought it? She was 28.

Choose the correct words and complete the interview with the present perfect of the verbs. Then listen and check.

ny: Hi, Dmitri. Thanks for talking to us. First of all, how long have you lived (live) in California?
Dmitri: I 2 have been (be) here 3 for / since six years. I came from Russia when I was 24 years old. I love it here.

ny: And how long have you (have) your own business?
Dmitri: For / Since I was 25. I started it one year after I arrived here.

ny: And now you're a millionaire.
Dmitri: That's right. In fact I 6 have been (be) a millionaire 7 for / since I was 27.

ny: What's the best thing about being rich?
Dmitri: My car. It's a yellow Porsche Carrera. I 8 have been (have) it 9 for / since I was 28. But the best thing in my life is Ana. We 10 have been (be) married 11 for / since about a year but I 12 have been (know) her 13 for / since I was 26.

Answer these questions. Use for or since.

How long have you lived in your home?
How long have you studied English?
How long have you known your best friend?
54 Have you ever ...?
been and gone

Presentation

Have you ever ...?
Use Have you ever ...? questions to ask about life experiences:
Have you ever been to the USA?

ever and never
You often use ever with present perfect questions. It means ‘at any time’ in the past. Never means ‘at no time’.
A: Have you ever eaten sushi?
B: No, never.

been and gone
Use been to talk about a place you went to but you are back now: I’ve been to the USA three times.
Use gone to talk about a person who is away and hasn’t returned yet: He’s gone to the USA.

TIP The present perfect and the past simple talk about the past.
With the past simple you know (or say) when the action happened.
I’ve been to Florida.
I went to Florida last year.
Look at the photos. Write six questions with Have you ever ...? Use the verbs and nouns in the boxes.

verbs: be drink eat see play ride

nouns: Red Bull basketball to-Australia a James Bond film a motorbike Greek yoghurt

1 Have you ever been to Australia?
2
3
4
5
6

Match the responses a–f to the questions in exercise 1.

a No, I haven’t. I don’t like fizzy drinks.
b No, I haven’t. I prefer tennis.
c No, I haven’t. I haven’t got a licence.
d No, I haven’t, but my sister went to New Zealand last year.
e No, I haven’t. I don’t like action films.
f No, I haven’t. I can’t eat milk products.

Write sentences with never.

1 Canada ✓ the USA X I’ve been to Canada but I’ve never been to the USA.
2 Coca-Cola® ✓ Pepsi-Cola® X
3 table tennis ✓ tennis X
4 bicycle ✓ motorbike X
5 French ✓ Spanish X
6 piano ✓ guitar X
7 sushi ✓ curry X
8 dolphin ✓ blue whale X

2.05 Write conversations. Then listen and check.

1 Canada? → yes: Montreal last year
   A: Have you ever been to Canada?
   B: Yes, I have. I went to Montreal last year.
2 rugby? → yes: when I was at school
   A:
   B:
3 curry? → yes: in London last summer
   A:
   B:
4 Romeo and Juliet? → yes: at the Globe Theatre in May
   A:
   B:
Review of units 51 to 54

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of have. Add n't where necessary.

1 You haven't cleaned your shoes. They look terrible.
2 Let's go inside. It started raining.
3 She's hungry. She had breakfast yet.
4 We're just in time. The film started yet.
5 Oh no! It's my girlfriend's birthday and I bought her anything.
6 They left their books in my car.
7 He was really tired so he gone to bed.
8 Oh, no! I broken my camera.

2 Complete the letter with just, yet or already.

Hi Jenny,
We've been in New York for one day and we've already visited the Empire State Building! We haven't been to the Statue of Liberty — we're going there this afternoon.
Peter's taken about 100 photos. I haven't taken any — I lost my camera and I haven't bought a new one.
Right now we're in a Japanese restaurant.
We've had lunch — it was great. Have you ever had sushi?
See you soon,
Gaz

3 Write sentences with since or for. Use the present perfect of the verb in brackets.

1 My cousin Tom's a dentist. He became a dentist fifteen years ago. (be)
   He's been a dentist for fifteen years.
2 He's from London but he lives in Edinburgh. He moved there five years ago. (live)
3 He supports Arsenal FC. He started supporting them when he was five. (support)
4 He's got a BMW. He bought it when he was eighteen. (have)
5 His wife's name is Meg. He met her eight years ago. (know)
6 They got married in January. (be)
7 Rosey's got her own business. She started it in 2005. (have)

4 Write questions with Have you ever ...? and the correct form of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>drink</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>eat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 Have you ever been to Canada?
2 Greek wine?
3 golf?
4 Hamlet?
5 caviar?
Match responses a–e to questions 1–5 in exercise 4.

a  No, I haven’t. But I’ve played tennis.
b  Yes, I have. I saw it last month at the theatre.
c  Yes, I have. I drank it in Athens on holiday.
d  No, I haven’t. Is it delicious?
e  Yes, I have. I went there last year.

onunciation: have

Listen to the sentences. Do you hear the full form or the contracted form of have?

1  have    've
2  have    've
3  have    've
4  have not    haven’t
5  have not    haven’t
6  has    's
7  has    's
8  has not    hasn’t

Vocabulary

Match the verbs with the life events phrases.

1  buy    b
2  get    b
3  graduate    c
4  have    d
5  move    e
6  pass    f

1  a baby
2  a car
3  your driving test
4  house
5  married
6  from university

Complete the daily events and housework with the verbs in the box.

- clean  comb  do  have  iron
  make  ride  tidy

1  clean your shoes / your teeth / the bathroom
2  a shower / lunch / an idea
3  your shirt / clothes
4  the washing-up / the shopping
5  the bed / dinner / money
6  your hair
7  your room / your desk
8  a bicycle / a motorbike

Listen again

9  Listen and answer the questions.

1  Has he phoned Angelina yet?
   No, he hasn’t.
2  When is he going to phone her?
   At four o’clock.
3  Has he phoned Tom yet?

4  Has he talked to Kevin yet?

5  Has he emailed Sharon yet?

6  When is he going to email her?

7  Has he talked to Martin yet?

8  When is he going to talk to him?
Past continuous

Use the past continuous to talk about...
• actions and events around a time in the past: *It was eight o'clock. People were driving to work.*
• background events: *The sun was shining.*

It was eight o'clock. People were driving to work.
(People started driving before eight o'clock and continued after eight o'clock.)

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td>driving to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>We</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td>going to school.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Were</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>driving to work?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was</td>
<td>going to school?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>was.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>were.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wasn’t.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>weren’t.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** You don’t normally use state verbs (e.g. *be, like, believe*) in the continuous form.

**Key vocabulary** Background events: the moon/sun was shining, it was raining, the wind was blowing, a dog was barking, bells were ringing, snow was falling.
Exercises

1 Write affirmative and negative sentences. Use the past continuous.

1 the snow / fall / and the children / play / in it
   The snow was falling and the children were playing in it.
2 the telephone / ring but Mike / work / in the garden
3 the students / not / do their work when the teacher came in
4 the baby / cry / because / a dog / bark
5 it / not / rain / so we ate outside
6 I / not plan / to go out but my friend was bored

2 Read the first part of the story. Then answer the questions.

It was midnight and the moon was shining in the sky. The church bell was ringing and dogs were barking. The wind was blowing but it wasn't raining. A baby was crying but her parents were sleeping ...

1 Was the sun shining? No, it wasn't.
2 Was the church bell ringing? _______________________
3 Were the dogs barking? _______________________
4 Was it raining? _______________________
5 Were the baby's parents watching TV? _______________________

3 Complete the conversation with the past continuous of the verbs.

A: I loved Paris. I was there in 1999.
B: Really? How long were you living (live) there?
A: For six months. I was a student.
B: What (you study)?
A: Art.
B: That's amazing. My two brothers (study) art in Paris in 1999. Maybe you know them.
A: Which part (they live) in? I was in Montmatre.
B: No, I (not talk) about Paris in France. They (live) in Paris in Texas!
A: Oh, I see.
Who killed Lord Hunter?

Lord Hunter was reading in the library when he died. Only three people lived with him: Detective Blane was looking at them — Lord Hunter’s brother, his wife and his butler. First, the detective asked Lord Hunter’s brother, Richard Hunter, a question. ‘What were you doing this evening, Mr Hunter?’
‘I was having dinner in the dining room at eight o’clock.’
‘And were you having dinner, Lady Hunter?’
‘No, I wasn’t. I was sleeping in my bedroom at eight o’clock because I was tired.’
‘What about you?’ The detective was looking at the butler.

‘I was tidying the library at eight o’clock. Suddenly I found Lord Hunter on the floor.

‘It’s interesting,’ said Blane. ‘When Lord Hunter died at eight o’clock, you were having dinner and you were sleeping. But I didn’t say eight o’clock. In fact, Lord Hunter died at half past eight.’

Presentation

You often use the past continuous and the past simple together to talk about two actions in the past.
- Use the past continuous to talk about an action that was in progress around a time in the past.
- Use the past simple to talk about an action that 1) happened during, or 2) stopped the action in the past continuous.

The butler found Lord Hunter’s body while/when he was tidying the library.

The butler was tidying the library when he found Lord Hunter’s body.

While, when and suddenly

- You often use while with the past continuous: He died while I was sleeping.
- Use when with the past continuous and past simple: He died when I was sleeping. I was sleeping when he died.
- Use suddenly to describe an immediate change: The sun was shining. Suddenly, it started raining.

Key vocabulary: Rooms: bedroom, dining room, kitchen, library, living room, study
Choose the correct forms.

I was cooking when the doorbell rang / was ringing.
I watched / was watching my favourite TV programme when the baby started to cry.
The dogs barked / were barking. Suddenly, they were quiet.
When we were tidying the study, we found / were finding my old school photographs.
I was waiting at the train station when I saw / was seeing my brother.
While I had / was having lunch my friend called.
We were driving home. Suddenly, the car engine stopped / was stopping.
While she was cleaning the kitchen, another guest arrived / was arriving.

Complete the conversation with the past simple or past continuous of the verbs. Then listen and check.

Detective: What were you doing (do) here at midnight?
Fitness: I was driving (drive) along this road when my car suddenly stopped (stop). So I walked to the house and rang the doorbell.
Detective: Did you see anyone while you were waiting (wait)?
Fitness: No. It was raining (rain) and a dog was barking (bark). Suddenly the door opened (open) but no one was there.
Detective: You entered (enter) the house?
Fitness: Yes. And while I was walking (walk) through the house, I saw (see) the woman. She was crying.
Detective: What did you do (do) next?
Fitness: I asked her name.

Take sentences. Use the past continuous and past simple.

I met / old friend / while / wait / at the bus station
I met an old friend while I was waiting at the bus station.

they / not work / when / we / arrive

when / she / call, I / have / a bath

everyone / look / at the sky. Suddenly, they / see / the aliens!

while / we / eat / breakfast, my taxi / arrive

I / read / my book when / the lights / go out

while / we / watch / TV / Molly / tell us / her / news

my parents / live / Italy / when / I / born
58 Conjunctions
and, or, but, before, after, while, when, because and so

Rome, 17th April
Dear Megan
We’re in Rome at last. The trip began in London. I didn’t like England but I loved Scotland. There wasn’t time to see Ireland or Wales so we went straight to Paris. And guess what? While we were visiting the Eiffel Tower, we met some old college friends. We travelled with them in their car to Spain because it was cheaper than the train. After we reached Barcelona, we took a boat to Italy.

Presentation

Use and, or, but to connect words or parts of sentences.

- Use and to add information or to talk about a sequence: We visited Austria and Russia. We left England and crossed to France.
- Use or for choices and alternatives: Which do you prefer: England or Scotland? Also use or for two negative facts: There wasn’t time to visit Ireland or Wales.
- Use but to talk about differences: The hotel was good but expensive. I liked Paris but I didn’t like London.

Use before, after, while, when, because, so to connect two parts of a sentence.

- Use before, after and when to show a sequence: Before we went to Paris, we visited London. We were in London before we went to Paris.
- Use while and when to talk about two actions at the same time: While I was travelling, I met an old friend. I often meet old friends when I go to Paris.
- Use because to give a reason: We travelled in their car because it was cheaper than the train.
- Use so to show a result: They were driving to Spain so we travelled in their car.

Key vocabulary
Travel verbs: begin (in), go, visit, travel, drive, reach, take (a boat, a taxi, a train)
Places to visit: museum, art gallery, palace, park, monument, beach

Exercises

1 Choose the correct conjunctions.

1 After/ When we visited the museum, we went to the park.
2 We didn’t go to the palace so / because it was too expensive.
3 They visited the museum and / or the monument on the same day.
4 I didn’t see the palace but / or the museum.
5 And / Before we went to the park, we visited the museum.
6 When / While we reached Sicily, we spent two days on the beach.
7 The gallery was closed so / and we sat in the park.
8 While / After I was waiting for the boat, I had lunch.
9 The hotel wasn’t very nice when / but the restaurant was great.
Complete the conversation with the words in the boxes. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>and</th>
<th>after</th>
<th>but</th>
<th>so</th>
<th>while</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A: Have you ever been to Australia?
B: Yes, in fact I went when I was sixteen and again when I was twenty. I went the second time when I was taking a gap year.
A: Wow! Did you go to New Zealand, too?
B: Yes ... Australia, I went to New Zealand I only travelled round the North Island. I was only there for a week. I didn't have time for the South Island as well.

because or when

A: So which did you prefer, Australia or New Zealand?
B: I suppose Australia but only we had problems at the airport in New Zealand. we were leaving for Los Angeles, there was a 36-hour delay!

Join the sentences. Use the conjunction in brackets.

1. We went to London. We went to Paris. (and)
   We went to London and Paris.
2. We didn't have time to visit the palace. We didn't have time to visit the park. (or)
3. We booked tickets. We went to the theatre. (before)
4. We had dinner. We went to the theatre. (after)
5. She liked the theatre. She didn't enjoy the opera. (but)
6. I was waiting for a taxi. My friend arrived with his car. (while)
7. The art gallery closed. I went for a drink. (when)
8. We didn't go to the palace. We were hungry. (because)
9. The museum was closed. He went shopping. (so)
Presentation

Use *used to* to talk about states or habits in the past.

- State: *I used to have long hair.*
- Habit: *I used to get up at six o'clock.*

Affirmative and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You / He / She / We / They</th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>have pink hair.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>didn't use to</td>
<td>wear a uniform.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions and short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Did</th>
<th>I / you / he / she / we / they</th>
<th>use to</th>
<th>have pink hair?</th>
<th>wear a uniform?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>I / you / he / she / we / they</td>
<td>did.</td>
<td>No, I / you / he / she / we / they</td>
<td>didn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** The past simple is also correct for states and habits in the past but you often use *used to.*

With *used to,* you don't need to give a particular time.

- *I worked in my father's shop when I was young.*
- *I used to work in my father's shop.*

Exercises

1 Correct the mistakes. Two sentences are correct.

1 I use to work in a shop.
2 My grandparents used to visit us every Sunday.
3 We didn't use to have aeroplanes.
4 Television didn't used to be in colour.
5 I used to loved chocolate!
6 Did you used to live here?

Fred: Is that really you?
Mandy: Yes, I used to have pink hair.
Fred: Amazing! And did you used to wear uniforms?
Mandy: Yes, we did. I hated it.
Fred: Where's your hat?
Mandy: I didn't use to wear mine. My teacher used to get really angry with me.
Complete the conversation with *used* or *use*. Then listen and check.

Child: Grandfather, did you 1 ________ to go to school?

Grandfather: Yes, I did. But I 2 ________ to walk. We didn't have a car in those days.

Child: How long did it 3 ________ to take?

Grandfather: I 4 ________ to get up at six o'clock and my sisters and I walked for an hour. The school was in the next village.

Child: What was your favourite subject?

Grandfather: Well, I didn't 5 ________ to like school very much. The teachers didn’t 6 ________ to be very nice. But I suppose reading books was my favourite lesson. I 7 ________ to enjoy that and I still do!

Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of *used to*.

1. She  didn't use to wear lots of make up.

2. He  

3. He  

4. They  

4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1. I used to  but I don’t now.

2. I didn't use to  but I do now.
Review of units 56 to 59

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with the past continuous of the verbs in the box.

have not look run study talk not work

1 I met some friends while I ___ was running ___ in the park.
2 Who ___ you ___ to on the phone just now?
3 I tried to call you earlier but my phone ___ ___.
4 I've just seen my sister and Jamie. They ___ lunch in a café.
5 Karen ___ for her exam last night?
6 John took a photo of me while I ___ ___.

2 Complete the texts with the past simple or past continuous of the verbs.

Matthew ___ was sleeping ___ (sleep) but suddenly he ___ (wake up).
He ___ (look) out of the window and on the hillside a strange dog ___ (bark).

I ___ (cycle) to the supermarket when a car ___ (drive) in front of me. I shouted: You ___ (not look) where you were going! The driver ___ (say) he was sorry.

3 Complete the conjunctions.

1 I always like to eat chocolate after a evening meal.
2 Roger and Betty are married.
3 I left the cinema early before the film was boring.
4 Before you go to bed, please tidy your room.
5 Normally, I like any music before this is awful!
6 Would you like tea or coffee?
7 I was tired so I went to bed.
8 We were talking when the teacher came in.
9 What were you doing when I was working?

4 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of used to.

1 I lived in Beijing when I was a child. I used to live in Beijing when I was a child.
2 What did you do when you worked there?
3 He didn't like carrots before he left home.
4 They had long hair in 1975.
5 She didn't drive before last year.
6 As a student, when did you go to bed?
Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/

Listen to these sentences. Do you hear /s/ or /z/ in used or use?
1. I used all the cheese for my sandwich. /z/
2. He didn’t use to be lazy. /s/
3. Did she use to live here?
4. We used dictionaries in the exam.
5. It used to be harder to travel abroad.
6. I didn’t use your mobile phone.

Listen again

Listen and write in the missing words.

A: Have you ever been to Australia?
B: Yes, in fact I went
1. ___________________________ and
again when I was twenty. I went the second time
2. ___________________________ a gap
year.
A: Wow! Did you go to New Zealand too?
B: Yes ... 3
I went to New Zealand
4
round the North Island. I was only there for a
week 5
for the South Island as well.
B: So which did you prefer,
6
? 7
A: I suppose Australia but only
at the
airport in New Zealand.
8
for Los Angeles, there was a 36-hour delay!

Vocabulary

6. Write the words for rooms.
1. b- dr---m
2. d- n-ng r--m
3. k- tch-n
4. l- br- ry
5. l- v- ng r--m
6. st- dy

7. Complete the postcard with the words in the box.
gallery  palace  monument  beach  park

Hi Felicity
From my hotel room I can see the King’s 1. ___________ but I haven’t seen him
yet! Yesterday we visited the national art
2. ___________. After that we ate bread and
cheese in the 3. ___________ next to a large
4. ___________ of another king on his horse.
Tomorrow, we’re leaving the city for a few days.
We want to sit on a 5. ___________ for a
few days after all this sightseeing!
See you soon
Andrew
Report

Students: January and February

In January, none of the students was female. All of them were male.

In February, some students were male but most of them were female.

Presentation

all

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All</th>
<th>students the students</th>
<th>are married</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All of</td>
<td>the students them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

most and some

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most</th>
<th>students</th>
<th>are married</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most of</td>
<td>the students them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Some</th>
<th>students</th>
<th>are married</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some of</td>
<td>the students them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

none

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>None of</th>
<th>the students them</th>
<th>is married</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Use all, most or some without of, to talk about people or things in general:
Some people don't like cats. Most people like ice cream.

Key vocabulary Learning a language: listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, vocabulary, literature
Exercises

1 Look at the charts. Complete the sections from the report with all, most, some or none.

**Students: May**

**CHART 1: AGE**
1. None of the students is younger than 16 years old or older than 29.
2. Some of them are between 25 and 29 but of them are between 19 and 24.

**CHART 2: NATIONALITY**
4. Some of the students are European. 5. of them are Asian or African.
6. of them is American or Australian.

**CHART 3: MARITAL STATUS**
7. of the students is married. 8. of them are single.

2 Add of to the sentences where necessary.

1. All of students are older than 15.
2. None of the students is older than 29.
3. Most of students are between 19 and 24.
4. Some of them are from Africa.
5. Some of students are from Asia.
6. Most of them are from Europe.
7. None of the students is from Australia or America.
8. All of them are single.

3 Put the phrases in order to make a report about the chart. Then listen and check.

- is Literature: none of
- studying Grammar and Vocabulary (70%). Some of
- the students has chosen it.
- the students have chosen it. Most of them are also
- them are studying Reading and Writing (30%). The worst
- Listening and Speaking has been a success: all
62 any-, every-, no-, some- / -thing, -where, -body, -one

Presentation

Use these pronouns with the verb in the singular form: Everybody wants you today.

- Use any- in questions: Is there anything to do?
- Use not any- in negative sentences: There wasn’t anything to do.
- Note that not any- = no-. There was nothing to do.

You can use these pronouns before adjectives to add more detail: She’s cooking something special for dinner.

You can use one instead of body: anyone, everyone, no one, someone.

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.

1 (nothing, everybody) Everybody was hungry but there was nothing to eat.
2 (nobody, everybody) There’s in the house. has gone to the beach.
3 (anything, anybody) There isn’t good on at the cinema. Does want to for a meal?
4 (anybody, somebody) There’s at the door – are you expecting?
5 (nobody, everything) I phoned but answered. Is OK?

Boss: Did anyone call for me while I was at lunch?
Secretary: Oh, yes. Everybody wants you today! First of all somebody rang about your car – it’s ready to collect. Then, you need to call your wife back. And finally, your friend Malcolm rang. He wants to meet somewhere for a drink this evening.

Boss: Were there any calls about work?
Secretary: No, nothing like that.
2 Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somewhere + nowhere</th>
<th>something + somebody</th>
<th>everywhere + anywhere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anything + nothing</td>
<td>anybody + anywhere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Has anybody got José's number? I can't find it anywhere.
2. I've got something exciting to tell you about anybody you know.
3. We didn't do interesting all weekend - we stayed at home and did anywhere.
4. I've lost my keys. I've looked for them but I can't find them anywhere.
5. I'm looking for to park, but there's in this street.

3 Rewrite the sentences. Change no- to not any- and not any- to no-.

1. There's nobody in the house. There isn't anybody in the house.
2. There isn't anything to do. There's nothing to do.
3. There's nowhere to go.
4. There's nothing on TV.
5. There isn't anybody I want to phone.
6. There isn't anywhere worse than here.

4 Complete the conversations. Then listen and check.

Conversations 1
A: Polly, I've got something to tell you. I'm leaving.
B: But why John? I did for you.
A: I know you did. But it will never work between us.
B: Oh, John. Is there I can do to change your mind?
A: No.

Conversations 2
C: Did you hear that?
D: No, I didn't. I didn't hear .
C: I think there's downstairs.
D: No, there isn't. There's downstairs. Go to sleep.
C: Then what was THAT?

Conversations 3
E: Your travel photos are wonderful. You've been .
F: Not really. Only to India and Thailand.
E: Well, it's more than me. I haven't done with my life and I haven't been .
F: That's not true. What about your camping holiday last year, for example?
63 both, neither and either

Presentation

both and neither
Use both and neither to say that two things or people are the same. Both is positive. Neither is negative.

Both of them are happy.
Both students are happy.

Neither of them is happy.
Neither student is happy.

either
Use either to say that the choice between two people or things is not important:

Either of them is fine. (= I like both of them. I don’t mind which one I have.)

TIP not + either = neither: I don’t want either of them. = I want neither of them.

• Both is plural: Both of them are students. Both teenagers are students.

• Either is singular: Either of them is fine.

• Neither is singular: Neither of them is British. Neither student is British.

TIP You can use these words with a noun: both students, neither country, either drink.
Exercises

1 Look at the interview notes. Complete the sentences with both or neither.

What's your name? Hans
Where are you from? Austria
Where do you live? In London
How old are you? 21
What do you do? I'm a student.
How tall are you? I'm 1.85m.
Have you got a car? No, I haven't.
Do you like rock music? Yes, I do.
Do you like jazz? No, I don't.
Do you play tennis? Yes, I do.
Do you play basketball? No, I don't.
Can you speak French? Yes, I can.
Can you speak Italian? Yes, I can.

Hans
Carlo
Austria
Uruguay
In London
In London
I'm 21.
I'm 21.
I'm a student.
I'm a student.
No, I haven't.
No, I haven't.
Yes, I do.
Yes, I do.
No, I don't.
No, I don't.
Yes, I can.
Yes, I can.

1 Both
2 of them are tall.
3 of them are 21.
4 of them can speak French.
5 of them like rock music.
6 of them likes jazz.
7 of them play tennis.
8 of them plays basketball.
9 of them is British.
10 of them live in London.
11 of them are students.
12 of them has got a car.

2 Write sentences with either and neither and the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>country</th>
<th>language</th>
<th>sport</th>
<th>type of music</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| 1 | I don't like jazz and I don't like rock music. I don't like either type of music. I like neither type of music. |
| 2 | I haven't been to Austria and I haven't been to Uruguay. |
| 3 | I can't speak French and I can't speak Italian. |
| 4 | I don't play tennis and I don't play basketball. |

3 Complete the sentences with both, either or neither. Then listen and check.

| 1 | Oh, no! I've lost ____________ of my earrings. |
| 2 | ____________ of those men is my husband. |
| 3 | I haven't tried ____________ of these drinks. |
| 4 | ____________ of the women were in the train station at eight o'clock. |
| 5 | You can take the bus or go by train. ____________ is just as fast. |
| 6 | ____________ of my parents is English. |
**64 much, many and a lot**
Countable and uncountable nouns

A: OK. How much rice have we got?
B: We've got a lot. We've got 10,000 kilos.
A: And how many tins of vegetables?
B: Not many. Just 2,500 tins.
A: That's not good. How much flour have we got?
B: Not much. Just 1,000 kilos.

**Presentation**

Countable and uncountable nouns
- Some nouns are countable: one tin, two tins, three tins ...
  Countable nouns have singular and plural forms.
- Some nouns are uncountable: rice, flour ...
  Uncountable nouns are always singular.

**much, many and a lot**
- Use much with uncountable nouns.
- Use many with countable nouns.
- Use much and many in questions (with how) and in negatives: How much rice? There isn't much rice.
  How many tins? There aren't many tins.
- Use a lot with both countable and uncountable nouns: a lot of tins, a lot of rice.

**Exercises**

1 Are these things countable or uncountable? Write C or U.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>C</th>
<th>U</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>rice</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>flour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tin of soup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>petrol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>air</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>space</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>window</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>CD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>DVD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Complete the conversations with much or many. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: How much time have we got?
B: We've got about an hour before everyone arrives.
A: How many people are coming?
B: Not three — about twenty.
A: Twenty? And how much money have we spent?

Conversation 2
C: Is the car ready?
D: Well, we haven't got petrol.
C: OK, and how much oil have we got?
D: Not and there isn't air in the tyres.

Conversation 3
E: Did you like the apartment?
F: No, I didn't. There wasn't light.
E: Really?
F: No, and there weren't windows. And there wasn't space either.

Conversation 4
G: How many CDs are there?
H: About five hundred.
G: What about books? How many books are there?
H: About a thousand.
G: And how many DVDs are there?
H: About two hundred.

Correct the sentences. Five are correct.
1 There are a lot of tins in that cupboard.
2 We don't have many salt.
3 How many milk do you need?
4 I have a lot of information about it.
5 There isn't a lot time. Let’s go!
6 How much rooms do you need?
7 There aren't many chairs.
8 How a lot of rice do you want?
9 How much sugar have we got?
10 There aren't much milk in the fridge.
11 Are there much people at the party?
12 A lot of people is vegetarians these days.
65 Review of units 61 to 64

Grammar

1. Complete the second sentence with **all, most, some or none**.

   1. 100% of the students are studying English. ____ the students are studying English.
   2. 30% of them are studying Chinese. _____ of them are studying Chinese.
   3. 75% are studying business. _____ are studying business.
   4. 0% are studying Latin. _____ is studying Latin.
   5. 100% of the students are between 14 and 18 years old. _____ of the students are between 14 and 18 years old.
   6. 80% are older than 16. _____ are older than 16.
   7. 70% of them are from Europe. _____ of them are from Europe.
   8. 25% are from Asia. _____ are from Asia.
   9. 0% are from America. _____ is from America.

2. Complete the sentences with ***everybody, somebody, anybody or nobody***.

   1. Everybody in my family likes ice cream.
   2. Is there ____ in the house?
   3. I'm sure I saw ____ in the garden.
   4. _____ came to my party – it was terrible.
   5. _____ came to my party – it was wonderful.
   6. _____ knows where they went on holiday. They didn't tell us.
   7. Has ____ seen my car keys?

3. Complete the sentences with ***everywhere, anywhere or nowhere***.

   1. Are you going ____ this week?
   2. I've looked ____ and I can't find my keys.
   3. There's ____ nicer than home.
   4. There isn't ____ to park here.
   5. Every year we go ____ for our holidays.
   6. The café was really busy and there was ____ for me to sit.
   7. I've seen that man ____ before, but I just can't remember where.

4. Complete the sentences with ***something, anything or nothing***.

   1. Wait a minute – I've got ____ my shoe.
   2. There isn't ____ on TV.
   3. I'd like to do ____ fun today.
   4. We have to go to the shops: there's ____ to eat in the house.
   5. Don't worry. ____ is going to be OK.
   6. He wasn't hungry, so he didn't have ____ to eat.
   7. There was ____ in the room was completely empty.
Complete the sentences with both, either or neither.

1. I've got two brothers. **Both** of them live in London.
2. **Either** of my parents speaks English.
3. **Neither** of us wants to go out tonight.
4. We can see **either** of the films, I don't mind.
5. Hmm, apple pie or ice cream … Could I have **both** , please?
6. I don't like **either** of these CDs very much.
7. We tried two hotels but **neither** of them had any rooms.
8. I can't decide. **Neither** of them is fine.

Choose the correct options.

1. **How much** / **many petrol** is / are there?
2. **How much** / **many time** is / are there?
3. **How much** / **many books** is / are there?
4. **How much** / **many DVDs** is / are there?
5. **How much** / **many money** is / are there?
6. **How much** / **many space** is / are there?
7. **How much** / **many people** is / are there?
8. **How much** / **many CDs** is / are there?

Vocabulary

8. What are the students learning in English? Match the words in the box to the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>listening</th>
<th>speaking</th>
<th>reading</th>
<th>writing</th>
<th>grammar</th>
<th>vocabulary</th>
<th>literature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How do you say this word? <strong>speaking</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sorry, I didn't understand. Can you play it again, please?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. What is the opposite of 'happy'?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. What's the past tense of 'do'?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I don't understand what Shakespeare means.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. What does this sentence mean?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How do I finish a letter?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listen again

9. **2.19** Listen and answer the questions.

Conversation 1
1. How much time have they got?
   **About an hour.**
2. How many people are coming?

Conversation 2
3. How much oil have they got?

Conversation 3
4. Was there much light in the apartment?

Conversation 4
6. How many CDs are there?

Conversation 5
7. How many books are there?

Conversation 6
8. How many DVDs are there?
Presentation

*a or an?*

Use *a* before a consonant sound: *a doctor, a celebrity, a university.*

Use *an* before a word beginning with a vowel sound: *an animal, an hour.*

Use *a/an* (indefinite article) with ...

- singular countable nouns: *a girl*
- adjective + noun: *a small dog*
- occupations: *I'd like to be a pop star.*
- possessions and residences: *I've got a huge car. She lives in an enormous house.*

**Tip** Don't use *a/an* with plural nouns (*girls*) or uncountable nouns (*information*).

**Key vocabulary** Occupations: actor, celebrity, chef, composer, engineer, pop star, shop assistant, teacher

Exercises

1 Complete the phrases with *a* or *an* where possible.

1. __________  actor
2. __________ exercises
3. __________ German actor
4. __________ water
5. __________ difficult exercises
6. __________ engineer

7. __________ Australian rock band
8. __________ shop assistants
9. __________ beautiful place
10. __________ cheese
11. __________ old car
12. __________ rock band
2.20 Complete the conversations with a or an. Then listen and check.

**Conversation 1**

What would you like to be when you leave school?
I’d like to be a great composer.
Really? Do you play music?
No, but I got a guitar for my birthday so I’m going to learn.

**Conversation 2**

Did you read about Robbie?
Yes, he’s bought an enormous house in Hollywood.
Can you believe it? I remember when he was an assistant in our local shop.

**Conversation 3**

Is there a library in the centre of town?
Yes, it’s straight ahead and on the right. It’s a huge building and it’s got a sign outside. You can’t miss it.

**Conversation 4**

How was the interview? Did they offer you a job?
Yes, and I get an office with my own computer!
Sounds great. How much holiday do you get?
I think I have a holiday after two years.
What?!

**Correct the sentences.**

He lives in an small apartment.

Maria was Maths teacher for three years.

They’ve got a tickets for the match.

My uncle is an engineer.

That’s beautiful bracelet!

Would you like table for two?

Robert De Niro is a American actor.

Have you seen a umbrella anywhere?

I’m going to be a chefs when I’m older.

Is there an bank near here?

**Read the text. The indefinite articles are missing. Write them in.**

Why do we love celebrities? Perhaps it’s because our favourite star is a singer or an actor. But what about celebrities who are famous because they are ‘famous’?

For example, Paris Hilton grew up in rich family. Then, as adult, she was always in magazine. She spent all her time at parties with other famous people. She has had many different jobs. She was model for a while. She made album, worked as actress in some TV commercials and films and has also written book. But her most successful job is as celebrity – whatever that is!
The White House is the official home and workplace of the President of the United States of America.

**Presentation**

Use *the* (definite article) with …

- singular and plural countable nouns: *the house, the houses.*
- unique things (where there is only one): *the world, the White House, the Indian Ocean.*
- superlatives: *Blue whales are the largest animals in the world.*
- groups of countries or countries which are plural: *the United Kingdom, the European Union, the United States of America, the Philippines.*
- locations: *in the middle, on the left/right, in the north/south/east/west.*
- musical instruments: *I play the saxophone.*

**Key vocabulary**  
*The world:* the Earth (the world), the sun, the moon, the Indian Ocean, the United States of America (USA), the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United Kingdom (UK), the European Union (EU), the Indian Ocean, the Black Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the North Pole, the Arctic, the Suez Canal, the Mediterranean Sea, the Red Sea  
*Places to visit:* the White House, the Eiffel Tower, the Statue of Liberty, the Atomium monument
The definite items are missing. Write them in the sentences.

1. This is Anouk. She’s from the Netherlands.
2. Sri Lanka is in the Indian Ocean.
3. Cheetahs are fastest animal on land.
4. Harald V is King of Norway.
5. Earth is 384,000 km from the moon.
6. My mother cooks best cakes in the world!
7. Can you play piano?
8. Paris is famous for Eiffel Tower.
9. That was worst film I’ve ever seen!
10. Black Sea used to be part of Atlantic Ocean.
11. There are twenty-seven countries in the European Union.
12. I love to listen to violin.

Write sentences. Add the definite article and make any other necessary changes. Then listen and check.

1. tortoises / live / longest
   Tortoises live the longest.

2. Yuri Gagarin / be / first man in space

3. Atomium monument / be / Brussels

4. / North Pole / be / in / Arctic

5. Suez canal connects / Mediterranean Sea to / Red Sea

6. Ferdinand Magellan / go round / world in 1519
68 a/an and the

Presentation

• Use a/an for things in general and the for specific things.
  A: Can I borrow a pen? (any pen)
  B: Sorry, this is the only pen I've got. (a specific pen)

• Use the for things you know about.
  A: The exams start next week.
  B: Yes, I know.

• Use a/an for the first mention. Use the for the second mention.
  A: Is there a football match tonight?
  B: No, there isn’t. The next match is on the 25th.

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences and questions with a/an or the.

1 Can I have a drink, please?
2 Is this only pen you’ve got?
3 We’d like table for two, please.
4 When does History exam start?
5 What time is last bus?
6 Is there airport near your town?
7 What’s name of your new teach?
8 Could you close back door, please?
9 Who’s girl with long hair?
10 I’ve got terrible headache.
2 Match the responses to a–j to the questions in exercise 1.

a Mr Baines.
b At midnight, I think.
c Sure. Tea or coffee?
d My sister.
e Yes, there's one about fifteen kilometres away.
f Of course.
g Would you like an aspirin?
h Yes, it is.
i At nine thirty.
j Certainly. There's one by the window.

3 Choose the correct options. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: It's hot in here. Can I open 1 a/the window?
B: Yes, but open 2 a/the window in the middle. The other two don't open.

Conversation 2
C: Is there 3 a/the hotel near here?
D: Yes, there's 4 a/the Hilton down there.
C: Thanks.

Conversation 3
E: Have you got 5 a/the computer at home?
F: Yes, I have. In fact, I've just bought 6 an/a/the Apple Mac.
E: What's it like?
F: It's fantastic. 7 A/a/the screen is enormous and it's really easy to use.

Conversation 4
G: Hello. I'm on 8 a/the ten-thirty flight to 9 a/the USA.
H: Can I see your ticket and passport?
G: Sure.
H: Would you like 10 a/the window or 11 an/a/the aisle seat?
G: Window, please.

Conversation 5
I: Who's 12 a/the man on the bicycle? He's very good-looking.
J: I'm not sure, but I think he's one of 13 a/the new teachers.
I: Oh.

Conversation 6
K: Can I have 14 a/the coffee?
L: Sure. There's 15 a/the cup in 16 a/the kitchen cupboard.
K: Thanks.

Conversation 7
M: 17 A/a/The film I told you about is on TV tonight.
N: Really? I was going to relax and read 18 a/the book this evening.
M: You should watch 19 a/the film. It's 20 a/the best film I've ever seen.

Conversation 8
O: I haven't had 21 a/the good meal in ages.
P: We should try 22 a/the new Italian restaurant in town. I've heard 23 a/the pizzas are great.
O: Good idea. Let's go tonight.

4 Write articles in the boxes. Then complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

1 The most famous place in my country is

2 My birthday is on

3 I've got

4 Next week, I'm going to

5 I'm

6 best holiday I had was in

7 leader of my country is

8 My favourite musical instrument is
No article

You don't often use an article with plural and uncountable nouns: There are buses to every destination. For information, contact us.

Don't use an article ... 
- to talk about things in general: I like cats. English people drink tea in the afternoon.
- for many place names: I live in Lima.
- for languages, countries and subjects: Take a holiday in Peru. Learn to speak Spanish. I like studying Geog
- with geographical features: Lake Titicaca, Mount Everest.
- with forms of travel and transport: Travel through the mountains on foot or by bicycle.

TIP: Don't use an article for these special cases: at school/home.

Key vocabulary | Travel: by bicycle, on foot, by car, by train, by taxi, tour, destination, arrive, travel round by bus, by subway, take a taxi, tourist
Exercises

1 Choose the correct options.
1 The Italian food / Italian food is the best in the world!
2 The people / People over there are from Germany.
3 Try the sandwiches / sandwiches at this café.
4 Who is the girl / girl on the bike?
5 I like the rock music / rock music.

2 Cross out the the where it isn't necessary.
1 We visited the Eiffel Tower last year.
2 Have you ever been to the Disneyland?
3 I go to the school at eight o'clock.
4 My father works at the home.
5 She goes to work by the bicycle.
6 I would love to see the Mount Everest.

3 Choose the correct answers.
1 I love _____ dogs. I have three of them.
   a a b the c Ø
2 I live in ________.
   a United States b United Kingdom c Uruguay
3 Do you speak ______ local language?
   a a b the c Ø
4 You can only travel to the village on ______ foot.
   a a b the c Ø
5 There's ______ bus every fifteen minutes.
   a a b the c Ø
6 There are always ______ taxis outside the station.
   a a b the c Ø

4 Complete the text with the, a, an or Ø (no article). Then listen and check.

Travel tips for visitors to Beijing

Transport
1 Beijing's metro and buses are often crowded so visitors should take ______ taxi. Don't worry if you don't speak Chinese - many taxi drivers are now learning ______ English.

Sightseeing
4 Great Wall of ______ China is about two hours by ______ car from ______ Beijing. Or you can see ______ panda in Beijing Zoo and then have ______ excellent meal in ______ CCTV (China Central Television) Tower restaurant.

Eating
You can buy ______ cheap Chinese food in the street or there are ______ international restaurants in ______ centre. Try Peking duck.
Grammar

1 Choose the correct options.

1 Elephants are larger than any other land anim
   Elephants are the largest land anim
2 Pam is a US citizen.
   Pam lives in of America
3 My uncle plays football.
   My uncle is player.
4 Your town is small.
   You come from .
5 Julia has two younger brothers. She’s 24 and
   they’re 23 and 21.
   Julia is in her family.
6 My degree is in Spanish.
   I have degree.
7 Coffee for me, please.
   I’d like , please.
8 My head aches.
   I have .
9 Hollywood’s most popular actress is currently
   Nicole Kidman.
   Nicole Kidman is currently in Hollywood.
10 History starts at three.
    lesson starts at three.
11 My sister’s flat is in Berlin.
    My sister has in Berlin.
12 There are two red cars and my car is betwee
    them.
    There are two red cars and my car middle.
13 This machine washes dishes.
    This is washer.
14 This song is by Abba.
    This is by Abba.

---

1 A space tourism industry is now open for business! Tickets cost $20 million for a ten-day stay in space. Dennis Tito was the world’s first space tourist. A Russia took an American businessman into space in the rocket. It arrived at the International Space Station on the 30th of April, 2001. In 2006, Anousheh Ansari, who is a telecommunications entrepreneur, became the first female space tourist.

As a space travel becomes more and more normal, travel companies are planning to offer regular flights. They are also designing hotels in space and holiday resorts on the moon.
Pronunciation: the

There are two ways to pronounce the.

Say /di:/ before words that start with a vowel sound. Say /də/ before words that start with a consonant sound. Listen.

the elephant /də/
the panda /di: /

Now listen and tick /di:/ or /də/.

1. the address
2. the mountain
3. the school
4. the umbrella
5. the celebrity
6. the ocean
7. the town
8. the bicycle
9. the Eiffel Tower
10. the White House

Vocabulary

Complete the crossword with travel words.

Across
1. place you travel to
2. go train
3. opposite of leave
4. a good way to travel around a crowded city
5. the old city

Down
1. a train under the ground
2. a person who visits places (on holiday)
3. you walk foot

Match to make six occupations.
1. com (composer)
2. pop (poser)
3. ch ef (chef)
4. cele (celebrity)
5. engi (engineer)
6. te (teacher)

Match to make places around the world.
1. the Indian Pole
2. the United House
3. the European Union
4. the North Liberty
5. the White Ocean
6. the Statue of Kingdom

Listen again

Test your general knowledge!

1. Which animal lives the longest?
2. Who was the first man in space?
3. Where is the Atomium monument?
4. Is the North Pole in the Arctic or the Antarctic?
5. Which canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea?
6. Who travelled round the world in 1519?

Listen and check your answers.
Presentation

Use will to ...

- talk about facts in the future: I was born in 1975. I'll be 75 in the year 2050.
- make predictions about the future:
  Pills will replace food. (= It's certain.)
  Pills won't replace food. (= It's certain not to happen.)
  I (don't) think pills will replace food. (= It's my opinion.)

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They will ('ll) be 75 in the year 2050.
will not (won't)

Yes/No questions

Will I / you / he / she / it / we / they be 75 in the year 2050?

Short answers

Yes, I / you / he / she / it / we / they will. No, I / you / he / she / it / we / they won't.

Exercises

1 Add 'll or will to the sentences.

1 Tomorrow will be a beautiful day.
2 One day I will be famous.
3 We will be in Rome tomorrow so meet us there.
4 Your new girlfriend will be at the party?
5 I think John will pass all his exams.
6 When you will be eighteen?

7 Who win: Real Madrid or AC Milan?
8 Don't worry: I'm sure you will get better.
9 Next week it will be the summer holidays!
10 Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
11 Nobody will be in the office tomorrow so don't call.
12 We ever find a cure for cancer?
2. Are the sentences in exercise 1 facts in the future (F) or predictions about the future (P)? Write P or F.

1. P    2.    3.    4.    5.    6.    7.    8.    9.    10.    11.    12.     

3. Put the words in order to make predictions.

1. become China country in richest the the will world
   China will become the richest country in the world.

2. buy everything internet on people the will

3. get hotter the will world

4. English everybody speak will

5. reach in 2020 Mars humans will

6. a hundred will everybody for years live

4. Complete the conversation with will, 'll or won't. Then listen and check.

A: 1. Will you be here tomorrow?
B: Yes, I 2. , I 3. be in the Sol Café at eleven o'clock.
A: 4. you be alone?
B: Yes, I 5. .
A: What about Cassia?
B: She 6. be here.
A: Where 7. she be?
B: She 8. be in Amsterdam with Henri.

5. Complete the conversation. Then listen and check.

A: Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?
C: Yes, of course.
A: When 1. will you be in Amsterdam?
C: 2. in Amsterdam on 1st August.
A: 3. alone?
C: No, 4. , 5. with Henri.
A: Which hotel 6. in?
C: 7. in the Four Seasons.
A: Be careful.
C: Don't worry. 8. very, very careful.
72 will (offers, promises and requests)

Presentation

Use will for …
- offers: I’ll come and pick you up.
- promises: I’ll be there in twenty minutes.
- requests: Will you lend me your car?

Exercises

1 Add 'll or will to the conversations.

1 A: This exercise is difficult!
   B: Don’t worry. I’ll help you.

2 A: Have we got a cake for Nell’s birthday?
   B: No, but I make one.

3 A: This suitcase is heavy!
   B: I carry it for you.

4 A: I don’t want to go to bed without a story.
   B: I read you one, I promise.

5 A: Are you going to the party tonight?
   B: I don’t know yet. You pick me up?

6 A: I can’t find my tennis racket.
   B: I lend you mine.

7 A: I help you if you like.
   B: No, thanks. I can do it.

8 A: Should I text you to remind you about the meet
   B: Don’t worry. I remember.

9 A: I bought this from your shop but it doesn’t work.
   B: That’s OK. We change it.

10 A: You send the books by post?
    B: Yes, of course. What’s your address?
2 Write offers with will.
1 I'm thirsty! (make / a cup of tea).
2 I'm hungry! (make / a sandwich).
3 I've just arrived at the station. (pick up).
4 I'm going to be late. (wait for).
5 I haven't got any money! (lend some).
6 I'm hot! (get / glass of cold water).

I'll make you a cup of tea.

3 Eddie and Flo have just got married. Complete their promises with I'll always or I'll never.
1 I'll always love you.
2 leave you.
3 be there for you.
4 look at another woman.
5 speak to James again.
6 put you first.
7 forget your birthday.

4 Write the son's requests. Then listen and check.

1 lend me / car?
2 drive me to / party?
3 pay for / taxi?
4 give me money / bus ticket?
73 will and going to (for decisions)

Presentation

Use will to show you are making a decision at that moment. (You often use it with I think.)

The man isn't sure what he wants so he uses will: I think I'll have the fish.

Use going to to show that you have already made a decision.

The woman has decided so she uses going to: I'm going to have the steak.

Key vocabulary

Adjectives: beautiful, bored, cold, hot, hungry, thirsty, tired

Food: chicken, fish, fried potatoes, pasta, pizza, salad, sandwich, steak, tomato, soup

Exercises

1 Put the words in order.

1 have I'll soup the think tomato
2 a have I'll pizza think
3 a chicken have I'll sandwich think
4 have I'll salad steak the think with

I think I'll have the tomato soup.

2 Make decisions for the situations. Use go, have or turn on and the phrases in the box.

Situation 1 I'm hungry.
Situation 2 I'm cold.
Situation 3 I'm thirsty.
Situation 4 I'm tired.
Situation 5 I'm hot.
Situation 6 It's a beautiful day.
Situation 7 It's started raining.

Decisions

I think I'll have a some pasta.

...
3 Complete the sentences with I'm going to or I think I'll.

1. I'm going to see Real Madrid play AC Milan: I've got tickets.
2. The sun's come out. __________ go to the beach.
3. I've sold my car. __________ buy a new one.
4. It's getting dark. __________ turn on the light.
5. I'm going to Tokyo for six months. __________ study Japanese.

4 Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

☐ I don't know. I think I'll travel around India for six months.
☐ What about you? Mark said you've got a job.
☐ What are you going to do when you finish university?
☐ That sounds interesting.
☐ Yes, I have. I'm going to work for a bank.

5 Look at the pictures. Tick what the person says.

1. I'm going to pay for it.
   I'll pay for it.

2. I'm going to have a holiday in Florida!
   I'll have a holiday in Florida.

3. I'll help you.
   I'm going to help you.

4. I'll be a doctor like my father.
   I'm going to be a doctor like my father.

5. I'll get it.
   I'm going to get it.

6. I'll have a dinner party tonight.
   I'm going to have a dinner party tonight.
74 going to, will and the present continuous

Presentation

will or going to for predictions?
You can use either will and going to for making predictions.

• You can use will without a clue or evidence: I think you will take a long journey together in the middle of the night.

• You can also use going to when there is a clue or evidence: The man is walking towards you. You’re going to meet him.

going to or present continuous for plans and arrangements?
You often use the present continuous and going to in similar ways but …

• use the present continuous to talk about future arrangements: I’m meeting my boyfriend for lunch.

• use going to to talk about a plan or intention: We’re going to visit Paris soon.

TIP You normally use the present continuous, not going to, with the verbs go and come.

Say We’re going to the restaurant. (don’t say We’re going to go to the restaurant.)

Say They’re coming later. (don’t say They’re going to come later.)

See Units 33 and 34 and page 236: Summary of future forms

Exercises

1 Match predictions 1–5 to the evidence a–e.

1 You’re going to hurt yourself. 2 We’re going to arrive late. 3 It’s going to be sunny today. 4 I’m going to pass this exam. 5 Billy is going to get really fat. 

a The traffic is really bad. b There isn’t a cloud in the sky. c He eats chocolate every day. d I studied all last week. e That knife looks dangerous.
2*2.30 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use going to, will or the present continuous. Then listen and check.

1 Rita and I / play / on

2 It's OK. I / pay / lunch

3 This year / I / learn

3 Complete the conversations with the present continuous or will form of the verbs.

1 A: What are you doing on Tuesday?
   B: I'm having (I have) lunch with Jerry.

2 A: Do you think Martin (get) married?
   B: No, I don't think so.

3 A: (it snow) tomorrow?
   B: Yes, I think it will.

4 A: When (you get) married?
   B: On the 25th of June.

5 A: Where (you go) for your holidays this year?
   B: To Greece.

6 A: (I like) this book?
   B: No, it's boring.

4 Choose the correct options. Sometimes both forms are possible.

1 Mike and I will have / are having a drink at five. Would you like to come too?
2 I've only got a few pages to read. I'll / 'm going to finish my book in a minute.

3 A: What does Johnny plan to see in London?
   B: He'll see / 's going to see a musical and also visit a few museums.

4 What time are you coming / are you going to come to my house?

5 When are you telling / are you going to tell me your answer?

6 We're going to /'re going to go to the cinema at ten o'clock.

5 Write about your plans and arrangements for these times. Use going to or the present continuous.

1 (this evening) ..........................................................

2 (next weekend) ......................................................

3 (next month) ..........................................................

4 (next year) ..........................................................
75 Review of units 71 to 74

Grammar

1. Complete the sentences. Write one word in each gap.
   1. We _______ going to see you later.
   2. They _______ coming I'm afraid. They're busy.
   3. What _______ you doing this evening at eight?
   4. I think I _______ meet you after the film.
   5. I don't think flying cars _______ replace normal cars in the future.
   6. He _______ going to be an engineer when he leaves school.
   7. He _______ having his birthday in a nightclub this year.
   8. _______ you give me a lift to the party tonight?
   9. It's an early flight. Promise me you _______ be late.

2. There is one extra word in each section of the email 1–7. Cross it out.

   From: Pablo
   To: Lorraine
   Subject: News

   Hi
   Great news! I passed my final exam. ¹What do you doing tonight? ²I'm going to celebrating at the Irish Pub. ³Please will come.
   ⁴I'll be being there at eight o'clock. ⁵Also my dad is are going to pay for a holiday. ⁶I think I'll going travel to somewhere like Spain or Greece. ⁷Anyway, I'll am see you tonight I hope.
   Pablo

3. Choose the correct forms.

   ¹ Are you being / Will you be here next week?
   No, I ²'m not. ³/won't. ³'m being / ³'ll be in Paris.

   What ⁴are you doing / will you do tonight?
   We ⁵'re going / ⁵'ll go to the opera – Jamie's given us tickets for Faust.

   Will we ⁶see / seeing you later?
   I'm afraid not. I ⁷'m going / will go to bed early tonight.

   Is it ⁸going to snow / snowing tonight?
   Maybe. The temperature is dropping.

4. Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.

   1. prediction  
      In 2050, I

   2. fact in the future  
      In 2050, I

   3. intention  
      Next year I'm going

   4. arrangement  
      At the weekend, I'm

   5. promise to a friend  
      I'll
## Pronunciation: 'll

5 2.31 Listen and tick the sentence you hear.

1. a. The plane leaves at five.
   b. The plane'll leave at five.
2. a. Pills replace food.
   b. Pills'll replace food.
3. a. I have tea in the morning.
   b. I'll have tea in the morning.
4. a. We pick you up from the airport.
   b. We'll pick you up from the airport.
5. a. Prices go up before Christmas.
   b. Prices'll go up before Christmas.
6. a. They learn the piano.
   b. They'll learn the piano.
7. a. Don't worry. I open it.
   b. Don't worry. I'll open it.
8. a. We always have lunch together.
   b. We'll always have lunch together.

## Vocabulary

5 Match the adjectives in the box to the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>difficult</th>
<th>hot</th>
<th>hungry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. 'I need a drink.' **thirsty**
2. 'This is really hard. Can you answer it?'

3. 'Turn the heating up!'
4. 'I didn't have any lunch today. Let's have something to eat.'
5. 'I just need to sit down for a minute and have a little rest.'
6. 'Can we open the window?'
7. 'This is really uninteresting.'

## Listen again

8 2.32 Listen and put the conversation in order.

- Be careful.
- Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?
- I'll be in Amsterdam on 1st August.
- I'll be in the Four Seasons.
- No, I won't. I'll be with Henri.
- When will you be in Amsterdam?
- Which hotel will you be in?
- Will you be alone?
- Yes, of course.
- Don't worry. I'll be very, very careful.
Prepositions of time (*in, on, at*)

**Presentation**

- Use *in* with months, years, seasons and times of day: *in February, in 2005, in spring, in the afternoon.*
- Use *on* with days and dates: *on Friday, on 28th November, on my birthday.*
- Use *at* with times: *at 8.30, at midnight.*

**TIP** Special uses of *at*: *at the weekend, at night.*

**Key vocabulary**
- **Seasons:** spring, summer, autumn, winter
- **Months:** January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- **Dates:** Use ordinal numbers (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) for dates, e.g. 1st January, 3rd March, 25th May

**Exercises**

1. Write the time expressions in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Year's day</th>
<th>29th February 1999</th>
<th>half past ten</th>
<th>the evenings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the third Friday of the month</td>
<td>Sundays</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>midday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>5 p.m.</td>
<td>the 1990s</td>
<td>the early morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>New Year's day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Complete the sentences with expressions from exercise 1 and in, on or at.

1. My birthday’s on 29th February so I only celebrate once every four years!
2. I really don’t like Britain. The days are so short and there’s so little light.
3. I like to get to bed fairly early. I’m usually in bed on week days.
4. I love studying. It’s so quiet. Everyone else is still in bed and I can really concentrate.
5. Most small, local shops are closed all day.
6. There’s a street market in the main square once a month.
7. We will be holding our next meeting at the community centre in the morning next week.
8. The world wide web was created.

3 Match 1–6 to a–f to make sentences.

1. I get up at
2. I don’t like going to the gym in
3. Our book club meets on
4. I have lunch really early. I often eat at
5. I moved to London on
6. I always go on holiday in

| a | August. |
| b | the same time every day. |
| c | 15th July 2005. |
| d | the evening. It’s too busy. |
| e | midday. |
| f | the third Friday of every month. |

4 Choose the correct prepositions. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: When’s your birthday?
B: It’s in/on/at 15th March.
A: When were you born?
A: What time were you born?
B: I’m not sure. In/on/at around eleven, I think.
A: In/on/at the morning?
B: No, in/on/at night.

Conversation 2
C: When do you usually get up?
D: in/on/at weekdays, I get up at about seven thirty, but in/on/at the weekend I get up at any time, whenever I wake up, really.
C: When do you usually go to bed?
D: It depends. During the week I usually go to bed in/on/at eleven thirty. In/on/at the winter I go to bed a bit earlier.

5 Answer the questions with true answers for you.

1. When’s your birthday?
2. When were you born?
3. What time were you born?
4. When do you usually get up?
5. When do you usually go to bed?
The swimming pool is on the left, and the changing rooms are on the right. The gym is behind the stairs. There's a sauna between the gym and the tennis courts. There are regular aerobic classes in the gym, and yoga classes in the dance studio on the first floor. There is information about all the classes on the table at the front door. At the top of the stairs there's a solarium and a terrace bar. So, here's your card and welcome to the club!
1 Match the places on the plan a–f to the words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>changing rooms</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis courts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance studio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reception</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solarium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>café</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the reception.
The gym is here, behind reception. There are two tennis courts here, between the gym and the swimming pool. The dance studio is opposite the gym and there's a café on the right of the dance studio. The changing rooms are here on the left, and the solarium is here, on the right.

2 Complete the conversations with in, on or at.

Conversation 1
A: See you later?
B: Yes, I'll be at the corner of the street at 8.30.

Conversation 2
A: Where's the bus stop?
B: It's at the bottom of the street on the left, you can't miss it.

Conversation 3
C: Where's your office?
D: It's in the third floor, in the middle, between a dentist and a lawyer.

Conversation 4
E: Can I use the phone, please?
F: Yes, sure. It's on the table, near the corner of the living room.

3 Complete the description with the expressions in the box. Then listen and check.

behind  in front of  in the corner  in the middle  next to  on the left  on the right  under

This is my family. This is my mum, sitting in the middle. That’s my brother sitting next to her. That’s me with my husband. us is my dad and us are our two children. you can see my dog.
**Presentation**

Relative pronouns introduce relative clauses. Relative clauses give information about a person or thing.
- Use *who* for people: *Bob is the person who does the repairs.*
- Use *which* for things: *A plunger is a thing which unblocks sinks.*
- Use *that* for people or things: *She’s the person that works in reception. It’s a thing that helps you do your job.*

**Key vocabulary**
Nouns ending in -er: banker, bottle opener, cleaner, computer, dancer, dishwasher, DVD player, gardener, hairdryer, lighter, plunger, printer, supporter, teacher, tennis player, writer

**Exercises**

1. Match the pictures to the definitions.

   ![a](image1.png)  ![b](image2.png)  ![c](image3.png)  ![d](image4.png)  ![e](image5.png)  ![f](image6.png)  ![g](image7.png)  ![h](image8.png)

   a. a bottle opener  b. a dancer  c. football supporters  d. a gardener  e. a DVD player  f. a vacuum cleaner  g. a hairdryer  h. a cleaner

   1. a person who looks after gardens  2. a thing which dries hair  3. a thing that opens bottles  4. a person that cleans houses  5. a machine that cleans carpets and floor  6. people who like a football team  7. a person who dances  8. a machine that plays DVDs
2 Cross out the incorrect pronoun.

1. A tennis player is a person **who** / **which** / **that** plays tennis.
2. A lighter is a thing **who** / **which** / **that** lights a cigarette.
3. A printer is a machine **who** / **which** / **that** prints pages from a computer screen.
4. A primary school teacher is someone **who** / **which** / **that** teaches young children.
5. A computer is a very complicated machine **who** / **which** / **that** can do any number of things.
6. A writer is a person **who** / **which** / **that** spends a long time in front of a computer screen.
7. A banker is a person **who** / **which** / **that** works in a bank.
8. A dishwasher is machine **who** / **which** / **that** washes dishes.

3 2.35 Complete the conversations with **who** or **which**. Then listen and check.

**Conversation 1**
A: What kind of films do you like?
B: I like films **which** make me laugh.
A: Me too, but I like films **which** make me think as well.
B: Or films **which** tell really good stories.
A: And of course, the actors are really important.
B: Yeah, I don't like the big Hollywood stars **which** always seem to make the same film.
A: Or those actors **which** always seem to play the same character.

**Conversation 2**
C: Let me introduce you to Briony. She's the person **who** runs the marketing department.
D: How do you do? I'm Marsha.
E: Pleased to meet you, Marsha. Where were you before?
D: I worked for a company **which** sold holidays online.
E: Oh, that's interesting. The internet is something **which** we're using more and more here. Maybe you could meet Matt **who**'s in charge of that. I'm sure you have lots of experience **which** we could use.
D: That sounds great.

4 Correct the mistakes. Three sentences are correct.

1. I know someone who knows Rafael Nadal.
2. I don't like food **which** has a lot of salt in it.
3. A biologist is a person which works in a laboratory.
4. He bought a new bike who cost him over two thousand euros.
5. Yesterday I met someone who went to school with me.
6. I've always liked people which laugh really loudly.
7. We stayed in a hotel who was over 200 years old.
8. Have you seen the bag which I left in the kitchen?
9. This is a machine who translates words into English.
10. No
Relative clauses 2

Presentation

Combining sentences
You can use relative pronouns to combine sentences.
I'm reading a book. The book has won an award. = I'm reading a book which has won an award.

Omitting the relative pronoun
Always use a relative pronoun when it is the subject of the relative clause (i.e. when it is followed by a verb).
This is the woman who wrote the book.
This is the DVD that goes with the book.
This is the photo which won first prize.

You don't have to use a relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause (i.e. when it is followed by a noun or pronoun).
This is the book (which) I read on holiday.
This is the woman (who) Jack was telling you about.
This is the CD Rom (that) the boss gave me.

Key vocabulary Collocations: read/write a book, see/make a film, sing a song, take a photo, win an award / a prize
Exercises

1 **Complete the conversation with **who** or **which**.

A: Have you seen the film **which** won the Oscar?
B: Is it the film about the couple **who** lived in Japan?
A: No, it's the one about the man **who** survived a plane crash.
B: Oh, is it the one **which** took five years to make?
A: Yeah, that's right. With the great ending **who** everyone's talking about. You know ...
B: No, don't tell me! I haven't seen it yet!
A: Sorry!

2 **Combine the sentences using **who** or **which**.

1 This is my new car. My parents gave it to me.
This is my new car which my parents gave me.

2 This is my friend. She helped me with my exam.

3 This is the book. I was reading it last week.

4 This is the film. I went to see it last night.

5 These are the CDs. I bought them online.

6 This is the song. They sang it at our wedding.

3 **Cross out the pronouns which are not necessary.**

1 Would you like to see the photos **that** I took on my holiday?

2 This is the guide who took us around the ruins.

3 And this is the couple that we met on the plane. They were great fun.

4 He's the one who fell and broke his leg! Poor guy. We had to call an ambulance. It was really expensive.

5 This is one of the hotels that we stayed at. It was really nice.

6 And this is the swimming pool that they had on the roof.

7 Oh, yes, and this is rooftop garden which had the most amazing views.
Review of units 76 to 79

Grammar

1 Complete the notes using in, on or at.

I've made an appointment for you with the dentist on Friday at 9:30.

I'm playing tennis on 4pm tomorrow, so I won't be at home in the afternoon.

Dave called. He says they're coming to town in the summer. Can they come and stay?

2 Complete the conversations with the prepositions in the box.

at at behind between in in of on on to

A: Where's the bathroom?
B: It's over there, 1 on the left, next 2 to the living room.

A: Where are the keys?
B: They're 3 in the table 4 in the kitchen.

A: Where's my coat?
B: It's 5 at the corner, 6 in the door.

A: Where's the chair?
B: There, 7 in the middle, look, 8 in the window and the table.

A: Where shall I meet you?
B: How about 9 at the top of the street?

A: Where did you leave your bike?
B: 10 in the bottom of the stairs, 11 in front 12 of the door.

3 Correct the mistakes in the crossword clues.

Four clues are correct.

1 a person which follows a particular team or sport

2 a person who plays football or tennis

3 a person who works in a school

4 a thing which you use to light a fire

5 a person who writes books

6 a person who looks after plants

7 a machine which you use when your hair is wet

8 a person who cleans your house

9 a machine which prints things from your computer

Tick (✓) the clues which don't need the relative pronoun.

4 Combine these sentences. Omit the relative pronoun where possible.

1 I loved the film. The one we saw last night.
   I loved the film we saw last night.

2 My favourite actor was the woman. She stole the
   I'm a fan of the woman. She stole the

3 These are the photos. I took them at the party.
   These are the photos I took at the party.

4 This is the photo. It won an award.
   This is the photo that won an award.

5 Do you like the CD? My brother gave it to me.
   Do you like the CD my brother gave me?

6 I like the singer. She sings in Spanish.
   I like the singer who sings in Spanish.
5 Correct the mistakes. Four sentences are correct.
1 This is the song which I really like. ✓
2 She's the woman which sings that song. who
3 The sauna is on the right of the gym.
4 This is a book that you should read.
5 Put her CD at the player.
6 I think they're arriving in eight.
7 Are you the person has the big black dog?
8 We always meet on Sundays for lunch.
9 Take the lift and his office is on the top of the building.
10 Sit on between Mike and me and tell us what happened.

Pronunciation: sentence stress

6 [2.36] Listen and complete the sentences.
1 The dance studio is at the ______ of the stairs.
2 He's waiting at the ______ of the street.
3 Put it down in the ______ of the room.
4 The changing rooms are on the ______.
5 The bar is ______ to the pool.
6 You're standing in ______ of the TV!

7 [2.37] Listen and repeat. Notice the stress on the bold words.
1 at the top of the hill
2 at the corner of the square
3 in the middle of the street
4 on the right
5 next to the bar
6 in front of the door

Vocabulary

8 Write the words from a sports centre.
1 sw-mm-ng p-—l swimming pool
2 ch-ng-ng r-—ms
3 s-—n-
4 d-nc- st-d—
5 t-nn-s c-—rts
6 ~r-bcs cl-ss-s
7 s-l-r-—m
8 y-g—

9 Complete the crossword with words ending in -er. Use the clues in exercise 3.

Listen again

10 [2.38] Listen and answer the questions.
1 When is his birthday?
2 When was he born?
3 What time was he born?
4 When does she usually get up on weekdays?
5 When does she usually go to bed on weekdays?
If/When + present simple, present simple

Presentation

Use if/when + present simple, present simple to talk about facts or things which are generally true.

- If you weigh 50 kg on Earth, you weigh 13,200 kg on Jupiter.
- If you add the numbers 1-100 consecutively (1 + 2 + 3 . . . + 100) the total equals 5050.
- When a bat leaves a cave, it never turns right.
- If a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female.
- It's illegal to chew gum if you live in Singapore.
- When you sneeze, it travels at over 150 kilometres per hour.

Amazing Facts!

TIP: This is sometimes called the zero conditional.

if or when?
In sentences about general facts, there is little or no difference in meaning between if or when.

If a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female. = When a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female.
(See also note on if and when in Unit 83.)

Punctuation
When the sentence begins with the if-clause, put a comma after the if-clause:

If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.

When the sentence begins with the main clause, don’t use a comma:

Water boils if you heat it to 100 degrees.
Exercises

1 Write the facts. Use you.

1  heat ice + melt
   When you heat ice, it melts.
2  go into space + float
   If
3  press this button + computer starts
   When
4  have a headache + an aspirin helps
   If
5  you sneeze + always close your eyes
   When
6  add two and two + get four
   If

2 Write clauses a–e in the adverts 1–5 from a supermarket.

   a when you buy two.  b When you visit our website.  c We pay you the difference
   d please return it within 28 days.  e If you spend over £50.


1 If you spend over £50, we enter you into our free competition.

2 If you find the same product for less money in another shop.

3 If you are not happy with a product.

4 You receive one extra.

5 you can shop online.

3  Complete the conversations with the affirmative or negative form of the verbs in brackets.
   Then listen and check.
   Conversation 1
   A: I have a problem, Doctor. If I drink coffee, I 1 don’t sleep (sleep) at night.
   B: Well, stop then.
   A: But if I don’t drink coffee, I 2 (get) tired.
   B: OK. Take this medicine and if you 3 (have) any more problems, come back and see me.

   Conversation 2
   C: I’m out of the office for the week. If you have any problems, call me but 4 (ask) Roger.
   D: Why not?
   C: He won’t know the answer. If I 5 (be) there, then wait until I am!
Presentation

Use *if* + present simple, imperative for instructions or giving advice:

*If you hear the fire alarm, leave your classroom by the nearest exit.*

*Unless* = *if not*

*Do not re-enter the school if your teacher doesn’t say it’s safe.*

**Key vocabulary** Phrasal verbs: call back, put back, put in, tidy up, turn off

**Exercises**

1. Complete the house rules with the phrases in the box.

   turn it off  close it  tidy it up  put it back  mend it  don’t use it

   **RULES OF THE HOUSE**

   1. If you open a door, 
   2. If you turn a light on, 
   3. If you move it, 
   4. If you break it, 
   5. If you use the kitchen, 
   6. Unless you ask,
Put this answer machine message in order. Then listen and check.

I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If it isn't urgent,
Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I can't answer the
email me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!
phone at the moment. If it's between nine and five,
leave your name and number and I'll call you back. Or call me
on my mobile if you like. That's 0770 879 3345. Or you could

Look at the pictures. Write sentences with if + present simple, imperative.

1 need help / ring / bell
   If you need help, ring this bell.
2 light / red / not cross / road
3 'd like / apply for job / complete / form
4 not have / a security badge / not enter
5 want / drink / put some money in slot
6 not feel better / tomorrow / phone / doctor

Rewrite the sentences using unless.
1 If you don't hear from me, don't wait.
   Unless you hear from me, don't wait.
2 Don't call the police if it isn't an emergency.
3 If it isn't important, don't spend time on it.
4 Meet at five if Rachel doesn't change the time again!
83 If/When + present simple, will

Presentation

Use if + present simple to talk about a possible future action.
Use will/won't in the main clause to talk about the result of that action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>if-clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If we go this way,</td>
<td>we'll (will) get to the campsite.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** Say *If I have time, I'll help you.* (don't say *If I'll have time, I'll help you.*)

If or when?

*When* + future action = certain future action
*If* + future action = possible future action

**TIP** This is sometimes called the first conditional.

**Key vocabulary** | Verb phrases: leave someone a message, hear from someone, see someone, ask someone something, leave someone alone

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If you _______ (leave) a message with your number, I _______ (call) you back.
2. If you _______ (not give) it to me now, I _______ (tell) your mum!
3. I _______ (pay) you five dollars if you _______ (help) me.
4. When he _______ (phone), I _______ (say) you're busy.
5. You _______ (not pass) your exams if you _______ (not work) harder.
6. If you _______ (go) now, you _______ (catch) the train.
7. When the police _______ (arrive), they _______ (ask) you some questions.
8. _______ (they visit) us if they _______ (have) time?
9. What _______ (Jane do) if she _______ (not hear) from Jacob?
2 Write sentences with *if* + present simple, *will*.

1. work hard at school, go to university
   
   *If you work hard at school, you'll go to university.*

2. catch the bus, run
   
   *You'll catch the bus if you run.*

3. not get a job, not have any money

4. the police stop you, drive too fast

5. not tell me the answer, not be your best friend

6. give me your email address, send you the attachment

3 Write in the missing 'll or will for each line of the conversations. Then listen and check.

**Conversation 1**

A: *If you turn left, you'll see the house on the left.*

B: *But it's a one-way street. If I turn left, the police stop me.*

**Conversation 2**

C: *If my plane lands at three, you pick me up?*

D: *Sure, but if it's delayed, you call?*

**Conversation 3**

E: *I send you to your bed if you hit your brother again!*

F: *I stop if he stops hitting me!*

E: *If you ignore him, he leave you alone.*

**Conversation 4**

G: *If I tell you a secret, you keep it?*

H: *Sure. It be between you and me.*

4 Complete the sentences with *if* or *when*.

1. I'll tell you all about it *when* we meet at three.

2. *I don't see you before I leave, I'll call you after my holiday.*

3. *you get the job, will you call me?*

4. We're coming down on Christmas Day so we'll see you *we arrive.*

5. *my son passes all his exams, he'll go to university.*

6. I'll let you know *dinner is ready.*

7. We'll see you on Tuesday *we don't see you before.*

8. *you run, you'll probably catch the train.*

9. Let's talk about this again *you get back from your holiday.*

10. *you help me, I'll help you.*
Hi Amy

Good news! If I take next Friday off, I can travel to Brighton and spend the weekend with you. Is that OK with you? If it is, should I drive down or take the train?

Malcolm

Hi Malcolm

That's wonderful news. I can't wait. If you come by train, you have to change trains in London but it's faster than driving. What time do you think you'll arrive?

Hi

If I catch the train at midday, I should be in Brighton by six. Could you meet me? Is that too early for you?

No, that's fine. But if you call me from the station, I can pick you up.

Presentation

Use if + present simple, modal verb to talk about future choices or options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the bus is late,</th>
<th>she'll get a taxi. (certain)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I can give you a lift. (possibility)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you must / have to call me. (obligation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you should take a taxi. (strong advice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he might miss the film. (possibility)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she could walk. (possibility)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key vocabulary Phrasal verbs: check out, get around, pick someone/something up

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences about the hotel signs.

1 When you leave, you must check out before 10 a.m.
2 If you pay by credit card, you can
3 Unless you work here, you cannot
4 If there is a fire, you have to
5 If you want room service, you should
2 Choose the correct modal verbs.

1. If the light is red, you **have to / can** stop.
2. You **could / must** study medicine if you want to be a doctor.
3. You **might / can** see James if you go to the party. I think he's going.
4. If I finish my homework, **can / must** I watch TV? My favourite programme is on at eight.
5. You **mustn't / don't have to** eat the meat if you don't like it.
6. **We have to / might** go away this weekend if the weather's good.
7. **Should / Must** I call you on your home number or your mobile number when I arrive?
8. If you join the army, you **could / have to** wear a uniform.
9. I **'ll / have to** join you for a drink later if I'm free.

3 Correct the sentences.

1. If you're late, you should to call me.
   *If you're late, you should call me.*
2. He can come later if you want.
3. If you have stay another day, that's fine.
4. She can learn French if she uses this computer program.
5. We take a break now if you will like.
6. The taxi can to pick you up if you want.
7. We must to meet up for dinner when you come to England.
8. You can stay with Lars if you will visit Stockholm.

4 Match the two halves of the sentences giving advice on travel to New York. Then listen and check.

1. If you want to enter the United States, **c**
   a. you might need to reserve a ticket in advance.
2. If you want to travel around New York, **b**
   b. you can use a credit card anywhere.
3. If you don't have cash, **d**
   c. you must have a passport with a visa.
4. If you have some free time, **e**
   d. you have to be careful in the street.
5. If you're out late at night, **f**
   e. you could visit Times Square.
6. If you want to see a show on Broadway, **a**
   f. you should take taxis. It's the fastest way to get around.

5 Write three pieces of advice for a visitor to your country. Use modal verbs.

1. If
2. If
3. If
85 Review of units 81 to 84

Grammar

1 Choose the correct forms.
1 If you need some money, [goes] goes to a cash machine.
2 You [dream] will dream when you sleep.
3 If it [rains] will rain, use your umbrella.
4 If you leave a message, I [call] 'll call you back this evening.
5 We [stay] 'll stay at home if there's something good on TV tonight.
6 Don't / Won't enter the building unless the police say you can.
7 If I get an A grade, my parents give / will give me 100 euros!
8 When I ask you to do something, do / does it!
9 When the cake is / will be ready, take it out of the oven.
10 If you don't / won't agree, we won't do it.
11 What do / will you usually do when you go on holiday?
12 What do / will you study if you go to university?

2 Match the two halves of the sentences.
1 Press I
2 Walk out of the building
3 They'll meet you
4 I won't come
5 I'll come with you
6 I'll eat the last one
7 You have to pass a test
8 Bill and Sally can play

a if you say what time your flight lands.
b if they want to.
c if you leave now.
d unless my girlfriend comes too.
e unless someone else wants it.
f if you want to drive a car.
g if you'd like to speak to an operator.
h when you hear the fire alarm.

3 Complete the recipe with when, if or unless.

Fruit crumble is probably the quickest and most delicious dessert in the world.

1. If you like apples they are good but any fruit will do. 2. [but] you have cut the fruit, put it in a large dish. Then mix the flour butter and, 3. [unless] you are on a diet, add lots of sugar. 4. [if] you've mixed it, you have the 'crumble'. Put it on top of the fruit.

Switch on the oven and 5. [when] it's at 200°C, put the dish in. Cook for about 30 minutes or 40 minutes 6. [if] you want the top to be brown.

It will serve about six friends, 7. [unless] you are eating it on your own! Pour some cream or, 8. [if] you have some, vanilla ice cream tastes good with it.
Complete the conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

1. When you press this button, the machine starts (start).
2. If you are happy with his work, (tell) him!
3. When the light comes (come) on, the machine is ready.
4. If you are not tidy (not tidy) your room, I won't give you a lift to the party.
5. When we reach the top of the mountain, we have (have) some lunch.
6. If you don't know the answer, your teacher is (not be) angry.
7. I pick (pick) you up if you tell me what time you finish.
8. If she wants (want) to travel abroad, she'll need a passport.

Pronunciation: intonation

In conditional sentences, the intonation rises on the if-clause and falls on the main clause. Listen to these sentences and repeat.

1. If you want to enter the United States, you must have a passport with a visa.
2. If you want to travel around New York, you should take taxis.
3. If you don't have cash, you can use a credit card anywhere.
4. If you have some free time, you could visit Times Square.
5. If you're out late at night, you have to be careful in the street.
6. If you want to see a show on Broadway, you might need to reserve a ticket in advance.

Vocabulary

Complete the phrasal verbs with the words in the box.

back back off up around up

1. When you are in Amsterdam, get around on a bicycle. It's the best way to see the city.
2. Turn that noise around. It isn't music!
3. Can you put my keys back in my bag, please?
4. Did you tidy up that mess you made?
5. Can I call you back in five minutes?
6. Tell me your flight times and I'll pick you up.

Listen again

Listen and write the missing words.

Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I'm on the phone at the moment. If I'm between nine and five, I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If it's urgent, your name and number and you back.

Or me on my mobile.

That's 0770 879 3345.

Or you me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!
-ed and -ing adjectives

Read what our clients say:
'I was surprised how much money I could really make.'
'There were so many interesting careers I never knew about at ENJ.'
'Before I discovered my job at ENJ, life was boring!'
Get excited with ExcitingNewJobs.com!

Presentation

• Use an adjective that ends in -ed to describe how a person feels.
  *Are you bored?*  
  *I was surprised.*

• Use an adjective that ends in -ing to describe the thing that causes the feeling.
  *We have 1,000 exciting new jobs.*
  *Life was boring.*

Key vocabulary  
Adjectives: annoyed/annoying, bored/boring, embarrassed/embarrassing, excited/exciting, frightened/frightening, interested/interesting, relaxed/relaxing, surprised/surprising, tired/tiring, worried/worrying

Exercises

1 **Choose the correct forms in the job interview. Then listen and check.**

A:  
   So, you're 1 interesting / interested in our advert for a shop assistant. Is that correct?

B:  
   That’s right. I think sales is a really 2 exciting / excited career.

A:  
   But you work for a sales company now. I’m 3 surprising / surprised you want to leave.

B:  
   It’s really 4 bored / boring. I’m 5 tiring / tired of answering the phone all day and I want to meet people!
   Also, my boss is really 6 annoying / annoyed.
2 How do these people feel? Match the words in the box to the pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interested</td>
<td>annoyed</td>
<td>bored</td>
<td>frightened</td>
<td>worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the adjectives in exercise 2.

1 These test results are ............................................... . How can we improve them?
2 This book is so ............................................... . Nothing happens.
3 I love snowboarding! It’s ............................................... because you go so fast.
4 My little sister is ............................................... . She never stops talking and she steals things from my bedroom.
5 We were driving home when a lorry turned and nearly hit our car. It’s really ............................................... .
6 My father is a security guard and works at night. It’s ............................................... work and he always goes straight to bed in the morning.
7 It’s ............................................... how much people spend on clothes these days. I can’t believe it!
8 The most ............................................... subject at school is history. I like reading about kings and queens.
9 There is nothing more ............................................... for me than lying in bed on a Sunday morning with the newspapers. I love it.
10 It was so ............................................... when I dropped my lunch on the floor. Everybody was looking at me.

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 It’s annoying when people ............................................... .
2 I think TV quiz shows are ............................................... .
3 The most exciting thing I have ever done was ............................................... .
4 I get worried when ............................................... .
5 At school I am/was interested in ............................................... .
6 The last time I was surprised was when ............................................... .
7 The most boring thing I have to do is ............................................... .
8 The last time I was embarrassed was when ............................................... .
87 looks, sounds, tastes, smells, feels
Sense verb + adjective

There are two faces in this picture. Which face can you see?

She looks young.

She looks old.

Presentation

You often use an adjective after these verbs: look, sound, feel, smell, taste.

She looks young. He sounds unhappy. This feels really soft. This air smells really fresh. This soup tastes awful.

**TIP** Don't use an adverb after these verbs.

Say *She looks beautiful.* (don't say *She looks beautifully.*)

**Key vocabulary** Adjectives: awful, beautiful, cool (= fashionable/attractive), delicious, fluent, fresh, great (= really good), lovely, old, polluted, relaxing, rough, sad, smooth, soft, sweet, well (= healthy), young

Exercises

1. Complete the adverts with the phrases in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>look younger</th>
<th>feel smoother</th>
<th>smell fresh</th>
<th>taste delicious</th>
<th>sound fluent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

With our RAZORS you'll feel smoother.

Does your breath 3.

24 hours a day? Be certain. Chew MINTY gum day and night!

by ten years with magic SKIN CREAM

Visiting London?

in English in only 7 days!

Doesn't your cooking 5.
2 Complete the sentences about the photos with the words in the box.

awful -eeet- delicious lovely old polluted relaxing rough sad sweet

1 He looks ____________________.
2 This feels ____________________.
3 That music sounds ____________________!
4 My dinner tastes ____________________.
5 It smells ____________________.
6 Why does he look so ____________________?
7 The air smells ____________________.
8 That feels ____________________.
9 It tastes ____________________.
10 That sounds ____________________.

3 Write in the missing verbs. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1
A: Are you OK?
B: I don't feel very well. I think I need a doctor.

Conversation 2
C: I haven't seen you for ages.
D: I know. You 2 great! How do you do it?
C: I go to the gym every day.

Conversation 3
E: This is Mozart.
F: It 3 beautiful.

Conversation 4
G: That 4 nice. Is it Chanel?
H: Yes, Number 5.

Conversation 5
I: How does it 5 ?
J: Really good. Did you cook it?

Conversation 6
K: That boy shouldn't be driving a car. He 6 too young.
L: Don't worry. I'm sure he's over seventeen.

Conversation 7
M: Something 7 bad. What is it?
N: I was making toast but I burnt it.

Conversation 8
O: This 8 spicy. Is it Indian?
P: Yes, it's a new recipe from my cook book.

Conversation 9
Q: Let's go to the beach this weekend.
R: That 9 great!

Conversation 10
S: Can you massage my shoulders?
T: Sure. How does that 10 ?
S: Great, thanks.
Adjectives usually go in this order before a noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>size</th>
<th>shape</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>colour</th>
<th>origin</th>
<th>material</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>small</td>
<td></td>
<td>old</td>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
<td>oil</td>
<td>paintings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>round</td>
<td></td>
<td>black</td>
<td>Tuscan</td>
<td>wooden</td>
<td>dining table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lamp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** In conversation, you rarely use more than two adjectives before a noun.
- With long lists of adjectives, you often write commas between adjectives: *It's an elegant, black, Tuscan lamp.*
- Numbers go before adjectives: *two small oil paintings.*

**Key vocabulary**

- Furniture: armchair, chair, cooker, curtains, desk, lamp, table, vase
- Adjectives: ancient, beautiful, black, blue, brown, comfortable, cool, cotton, nineteenth-century, elegant, fast, French, green, huge, Italian, Japanese, Korean, large, long, lovely, new, old, metal, modern, plastic, practical, red, round, Russian, square, stylish, tall, white, wooden, yellow

**Exercises**

1 Put the adjectives in the correct order.

1. large white metal
2. plastic practical square
3. red comfortable two
4. tall Japanese ancient
5. wooden stylish brown
6. cotton yellow long
2 Use the adjectives in the sentences to complete the descriptions.

1 I love your new shirt! It's cotton, isn't it?
2 This car is Korean. It's very fast.
3 That's a lovely necklace. Is it Russian?
4 Have you seen my old jeans? You know, the black ones.
5 This painting is French. I think, probably from the eighteenth century.
6 They're building a huge office block. It looks very modern.
7 I've seen some garden chairs for sale. They're made of plastic and green.
8 I bought these sunglasses at an Italian market. They're so cool!

3 Describe the following with some of the adjectives in the box.

Australian beautiful diamond elegant enormous eighteenth-century Italian modern plastic tiny ugly

1 She's a(n) ______________________ actress.
2 The Queen of England lives in a(n) ______________________ palace.
3 I'd like a(n) ______________________ necklace.

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. Use two adjectives each time.

1 I live in a(n) ______________________
2 Today, I'm wearing a(n) ______________________
3 My favourite possession is a(n) ______________________
89 Adjectives with prepositions

Presentation

Many adjectives are followed by particular prepositions:

I'm good at snowboarding.
Are you tired of your boring life?

**TIP** You often use the verb to be with adjective + preposition: I'm keen on dangerous sports.

**Key vocabulary** Adjectives with prepositions: annoyed with, bad at, bored with, different from, excited about, frightened of, good at, interested in, keen on, married to, surprised by, tired of, worried about

Exercises

1 **Choose the correct prepositions. Then listen and check.**

Name: **Lisa**  
Age: 41  
I'm good at art and very keen on painting.  
I love nature and the countryside but I'm frightened with spiders.  
I need a man to protect me.

Name: **Prescott**  
Age: 56  
I'm divorced and bored with being alone.  
I love fast food and I'm bad at sport but I'm loving and caring.

Name: **Pam**  
Age: 28  
Are you annoyed of or with the world?  
I'm really worried about global warming and tired by pollution.  
I want to meet someone with similar beliefs. Let's change the world together!
2 Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1 She's bored _______ this programme.
2 They were surprised _______ the news.
3 Are you tired _______ your job?
4 He isn't excited _______ his fortieth birthday.
5 Is she annoyed _______ her mother?
6 We aren't very good _______ Maths.
7 Is he frightened _______ anything?
8 He's really different _______ his brothers.
9 Who is Tom Cruise married _______ now?
10 Why are the police interested _______ what you're doing?
11 We're really bad _______ painting but we enjoy it.
12 There's nothing to be worried _______.

3 Complete the conversation with the adjectives and prepositions in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>interested</th>
<th>different</th>
<th>married</th>
<th>excited</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>worried</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A: So, are you _______ excited _______ about the big day?
B: Actually, I'm really _______ it.
A: Why?
B: Well, what if Sharon doesn't want to get _______ married me. She might change her mind on the day. My last three girlfriends all left me.
A: Don't be ridiculous! Sharon is _______ different all those others. She really loves you!
B: I know. But what happens when she finds out I'm no _______ anything. I don't have a good job and I have no money.
A: But she isn't _______ good about that kind of thing. She's only in love with you.
B: Do you really think so?

4 Rewrite the sentences using an adjective and preposition.

1 Flying really frightens me! I'm really frightened _______ flying.
2 History interests me. I'm _______ History.
3 Your news surprised everyone. Everyone was _______ your news.
4 This TV show is boring for the kids. The kids _______ this TV show.
5 Why is your new job worrying you? Why are you _______ your new job?
6 Saffron is annoying Peter. Peter _______ Saffron.

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I'm good _______
2 I'm keen _______
3 I'm bad _______
4 I'm frightened _______
5 I'm excited _______
1 Complete the adjectives.
1 You look very bored. What’s the matter?
2 Your holiday sounds great.
3 It’s really annoy when people telephone and try to sell you something.
4 My father flies round the world for his job. It’s very tiring.
5 I don’t think the children should watch that horror film. It’s too frightening.
6 Are you worried about your exam?
7 Did you watch the final? It was so exciting!
8 Your perfume smells beautiful!
9 Roy is married to Rita.
10 Your Spanish is quite fluently, isn’t it?
11 That want to close the factory because the air is polluted.
12 The programme is awful. Turn it off.
13 She’s really interested. Have you ever spoken to her?
14 This cake is delicious. How did you make it?
15 I’m not surprised that he’s leaving his job.

2 Complete the conversation with the verbs in the box. There is one extra verb.

- looks
- sounds
- tastes
- feel
- smells

A: So, I’m happy to tell you we have a new product for Christmas.
B: That 1 sounds good! What is it?
A: It’s a perfume for young professional women. Here it is. What do you think of the bottle?
B: It 2 sounds wonderful - very stylish. There’s only one problem.
A: What’s that?
B: It 3 smells disgusting!
I 4 feel sick!

3 Correct the sentences. Five are correct.
1 He’s interested in football. ✓
2 I have a white new fridge for sale.
   I have a new white fridge for sale ✓
3 They’re keen at golf.
4 There’s an elegant, diamond necklace in the window.
5 Emily is really excited at her birthday.
6 Who does that frightening brown big dog belong to?
7 I’m really bad with Maths. Can you help me?
8 I feel ill. Can I go home?
9 He looks intelligently.
10 That smells nice. What is it?
11 They look very happy together!
12 I was surprised on his new haircut.
13 This is a really romantic annoying film.
14 Those flowers smell delicious.
15 Why are you worried for your results?
Pronunciation: syllables and word stress

4. Listen. How many syllables are there in each word?

1. interesting 3. tiring
2. interested 4. tired
3. boring 5. annoying
4. bored 6. annoyed
5. exciting 7. frightening
6. excited 8. frightened
7. worrying 9. surprising
8. worried 10. surprised

Listen again and underline the stress in words with more than one syllable.

Vocabulary

5. Write the adjectives in the columns.

-ancient beautiful boring brown cool cotton elegant large metal modern old orange plastic red round small square wooden yellow

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>size/shape</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>colour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ancient</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>material</th>
<th>opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

6. Reorder the letters to make furniture words. Then match them to the pictures.

7. Listen and complete the notes about Lisa, Prescott and Pam.

Lisa
Age:
Interests:
Likes:
Dislikes:

Prescott
Age:
Marital status:
Likes:
Dislikes:

Pam
Age:
Concerns:
91 Verb + to-infinitive

Hi Suzie,
I’ve decided to leave my job – I’m planning to start my own business. I want to start a website for university students.
Ring me,
Alice

Presentation

After many common verbs, you can use the to-infinitive form of another verb:
I’ve decided to leave my job.

decide
plan
agree
refuse
want
hope
would like
to-infinitive

You often use verbs with to-infinitive to talk about hopes, intentions and decisions.
• There are two possible negatives. They often have different meanings.
  I haven’t decided to go. = I haven’t made a decision yet.
  I’ve decided not to go. = I’ve made a decision. It was negative.
• Don’t use the to-infinitive form after modal verbs (can, could, will, would, shall, should, may, might, must):
  Say She can’t drive. (don’t say She can’t to drive.)

Exercises

1 Match 1–6 to a–f to make a text. Then listen and check.

1 First, I want to travel around [b]  a Save the Children.
2 Then, I hope to work for [d]  b the world.
3 If possible, I’d like to help [e]  c married.
4 One day, I hope to get [c]  d happy.
5 I’d like to have [a]  e two children.
6 But basically, I just want to be [f]  f children in the developing world.
2 Put the words in order.
1 hoping I'm marathon New York run the to
2 at Economics decided I've study to university
3 after degree I'm immediately my not planning to work
4 me refused she talk to to
5 agreed not police tell the to we
6 an don't I to in office want work

3 Read the situations. Then complete the sentences.
1 A: Can we meet at nine?
   B: OK. Nine is fine.
   They agreed to meet at nine.
2 'I won't wear my red dress!'
   Matilda refused
3 'After school, I'm going to study medicine.'
   He plans
4 'It would be nice to leave early.'
   Richard would like
5 A: We can catch the train.
   B: No. Let's take a taxi.
   A: Good idea.
   They decided
6 'I'd like to have my own TV show one day.'
   Sasha hopes
7 'Can I come with you all tonight?'
   Richie wants

4 Write in the missing to in the sentences.
1 We're planning to go to Greece for our holidays.
2 She's agreed not tell David.
3 I hope move house in September.
4 I've agreed work late on Tuesday.
5 The bank refused lend me the money.
6 Carrie's decided not go to university.
7 Would you like borrow my dictionary?
8 I plan go on a diet.
9 We invited them but they refused come.
10 We decided not go to the cinema.

5 Write about your hopes, intentions and decisions.
1 One day, I hope to
2 I'd also like to
3 But basically I just want to
92 Verb + -ing, -ing nouns

A: What time shall we leave?
B: Let's get on the road at three o'clock.
A: That's very early.
B: I don't like driving at night.
A: Why not?
B: Driving at night is dangerous. I worry about having an accident.
A: OK. We'll leave at three.

Presentation

Verb + -ing

After many verbs, you use the -ing form of another verb: I don't like driving at night.
Common verbs followed by -ing are: like, dislike, love, hate, enjoy and (not) mind.

Nouns

The -ing form of the verb is often a noun:
Driving at night is dangerous.

Verb + preposition + -ing

You also use the -ing form after a preposition:
I worry about having an accident.
See page 234: spelling rules

Key vocabulary Leisure activities: camping, eating out, sunbathing, skiing, surfing, swimming

Exercises

1 Write what these people like or don't like doing. Use the words in the box.

| camp | do homework | eat out | ski | sunbathe | surf |

1 She doesn't like skiing.
2 He
3 We
4 She
5 He
6 They
2 Complete the sentences using the -ing form of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>clean</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>park</th>
<th>ski</th>
<th>smoke</th>
<th>steal</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Smoking is bad for you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>__________ is in the sea is nicer than in a pool.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>__________ TV all evening is boring.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>__________ is wrong.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>__________ a policeman is a dangerous job.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>__________ too much chocolate makes you fat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>__________ it is difficult.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>__________ it takes a long time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>__________ The violin is a difficult instrument. to play it can take years.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>__________ is more dangerous than playing football.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy a guitar</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>get old</th>
<th>go on a diet</th>
<th>learn languages</th>
<th>not phone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 She speaks French, English, Italian and Mandarin. She's very good at __ learning languages __.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Could you help me? I'm interested in _________________.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I'm getting fat. I'm thinking about _________________.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Do you ever worry about _________________.?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 John rarely goes abroad. He's afraid of _________________.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I'm sorry for _________________. I forgot my mobile.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Put the words in the correct order.

1 mind you I helping don't | I don't mind helping you. |
2 enjoy sports do playing you? | |
3 is exercise good swimming | |
4 about worry at driving they night | |
5 are at skiing you good? | |
6 like computer they playing games | |
7 sunbathing for is bad your skin | |

5 Make any necessary changes to these sentences to make them true for you.

1 don't mind |
2 I love watching TV. |
3 Smoking is a really nice habit. |
4 My friends and I often go sunbathing. |
5 Making time to study English is difficult. |
6 I'm thinking about getting a new job. |
7 I'm not afraid of flying. |
8 Camping is something I enjoy. |
9 I prefer eating out to eating at home. |
Welcome to Miss World.
Now, it's time to interview the contestants ...

What do you like doing in your free time?

I enjoy helping old people and children.

And what do you plan to do in the future?

I'd like to help old people and children.

You've finished your degree.
What have you decided to do?

I've decided to help old people and children.

So there you have it. Now it's time to choose!

Presentation

When there are two verbs in a sentence, they can follow two patterns ...

- verb + -ing: I enjoy helping old people and children.
  The -ing form also follows these verbs: dislike, finish, give up, mind, miss, practise, suggest.
- verb + to-infinitive: I'd like to help old people and children.
  The to-infinitive form also follows these verbs: agree, decide, plan, want, need, refuse, hope, promise, want, would like.

verb + -ing or to-infinitive?
These verbs can follow either pattern with little or no change in meaning: like, prefer, love, hate.
What do you like doing in your free time?
What do you like to do in your free time?
Exercises

Choose the correct forms. Sometimes both forms are possible.

1. They miss to live / living in France.
2. I hate to wash / washing dishes.
3. We’ve decided to move / moving house.
4. Can’t they agree to go / going next week instead?
5. We suggest to apply / applying for a job as soon as you can.
6. She prefers to live / living in the city to the country.
7. They refused to give / giving us the money back.
8. Have you practised to play / playing your guitar today?
9. Michelle and Marty want to have / having dinner at Tortelli’s.
10. Why do you think Jack loves to surf / surfing so much?
11. When did you give up to eat / eating meat?
12. They promised to help / help me this afternoon. Where are they?

Complete the questions with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Sometimes more than one form is possible. Then listen and check.

- bring
- drink
- sit
- try

1. Would you like to sit by the window?
2. Which do you prefer red, or white?
3. May I suggest the steak?
4. Would you mind me a different fork?

Read the situations. Then complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the underlined verb in the first sentence. Sometimes both forms are possible.

1. ‘Playing tennis is great.’
   Jane loves playing / to play tennis.
2. ‘Can I go tonight, too.’
   Bill would like , too.
3. ‘I’ll call her back.’
   He promised
4. ‘I’ve painted your picture. It’s finished.’
   The artist has finished
5. A: Did you listen to that new CD?
   B: Yes, it was good.
   She enjoyed
6. A: Can we watch a film?
   B: What sort? I have comedy and horror films.
   A: Oh, a horror film, definitely.
   He prefers
You can follow some verbs with the -ing form or to-infinitive, but there is a difference in meaning.

**We’ve just stopped to have something to eat.**
= We were driving. We wanted something to eat. We stopped driving.

**She’s stopped feeling sick.**  = She felt sick. Then she got better. She doesn’t feel sick now.

**Key vocabulary**  Health and illness: break a leg, feel sick, get better, have a headache, lose weight, stop smoking, take regular exercise

### Exercises

1. **Choose the correct forms.**
   1. We drove 300 kilometres and then stopped to eat / eating.
   2. We had an argument and he stopped to write / writing to me.
   3. I had to stop to play / playing tennis after I broke my leg.
   4. I stopped to smoke / smoking ten years ago.
   5. On way to my mother’s house I stopped to buy / buying her flowers.
   6. I’ve stopped to eat / eating chocolate. I want to lose weight.
   7. I was early so I stopped to have / having a coffee.
   8. Can we stop for a few minutes to smoke / smoking a cigarette?
   9. I read a negative article about that company and I’ve stopped to buy / buying their products.
   10. The doctor gave me a new medicine and I’ve stopped to have / having headaches.
2 Complete the sentences with *stop* or *stop to* and the correct form of the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>drive</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>relax</th>
<th>smoke</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

How to live a better life

1. **Stop smoking.**
2. **Don't** regular exercise.
3. You could **stop to** work and **walk instead.**
4. **Don't** junk food.
5. **Stop** time with your family and friends.
6. **Stop** to work and **start a new hobby.**
7. **Stop** during your busy day, always for about half an hour.

3 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs. Then listen and check.

**A:** Happy New Year! How are you?
**B:** A bit tired. I went to a party last night.
**A:** What did you do?
**B:** Well, first we stopped **1** to **pick** (pick) Mel up from her house.
**A:** Doesn't she still work at the restaurant?
**B:** No, she stopped **2** (work) there ages ago. Anyway, we all went to a great party and at midnight everyone stopped **3** (watch) the fireworks. But this morning I feel terrible.
   I must stop **4** (smoke).
**A:** That could be your New Year's resolution.
**B:** What do you mean?
**A:** Well, lots of people often stop **5** (do) something on January the first.
**B:** Really? So, what's your resolution?
**A:** I've stopped **6** (eat) fast food and I think I'm also going to stop **7** (watch) TV.
   I need to do more exercise.
**B:** Sounds a bit boring to me!
1 Choose the correct forms.

1 Did you hate go/to go/go (going) to school?
2 Snowboard/To snowboard/Snowboarding is quite dangerous.
3 Would you like try/to try/trying this dish?
4 I enjoy try/to try/trying dishes from different countries.
5 Have you stopped do/to do/doing your course?
6 Are you interested in come/to come/coming out tonight?
7 I want you help/to help/helping me with something.
8 Could you help/to help/helping me?
9 Ask William. He’s good at fix/to fix/fixed computers.
10 We can’t agree/to agree/agreeing with you, I’m afraid.
11 We’d like you be/to be/being in our team.
12 We hope meet/to meet/meeting at five.
13 She’s not bad at cook/to cook/cooking actually.
14 Did the President agree change/to change/changing the law?
15 He didn’t stop say/to say/saying hello. Why not?
16 He’s decided take/to take/taking the job.

2 Complete the email with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Dear Rich
I wanted to call (call) you on your mobile today but I couldn’t (find) your number. Anyway, you know I promised (have) a drink with you this evening? Well, do you mind (meet) at the weekend instead? The problem is that I haven’t finished (prepare) for a job interview on Friday. I really want (get) the job so I need (spend) some time on it. Hope that’s OK.
See you later this week.
Mindy

3 Look at the pairs of sentences. Which one is correct? Sometimes both are correct.

1 a The decided to leave their jobs and go travelling. ✓
   b The decided leaving their jobs and go travelling. ✗
2 a Mark prefers listening to rock music.
   b Mark prefers to listen to rock music.
3 a They’re annoyed about to miss the concert.
   b They’re annoyed about missing the concert.
4 a We love trying new restaurants.
   b We love to try new restaurants.
5 a I promise working harder in the future.
   b I promise to work harder in the future.
6 a We’ve become vegetarians so we’ve stopped eating meat.
   b We’ve become vegetarians so we’ve stopped to eat meat.
7 a Do your children hate eating vegetables?
   b Do your children hate to eat vegetables?
Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. I'm not going. He's decided __________________ not to go.
2. I won't talk to you. She refused __________________ me.
3. Can you photocopy this? I'd like you _____________________________
4. Don't smoke. It's bad for you. You should __________________________
5. On my way to work I met Jules. We talked. I stopped __________________ to Jules.
6. Sorry but I'm not good at making things. Sorry but I'm bad ______________________.
7. We're going to travel around Europe this summer. They plan ____________________________ this summer.
8. You shouldn't drink a lot of coffee. It's bad for you. Drinking __________________________ is bad for you.

Pronunciation: intrusive /w/

5. When we say to before a verb that begins with a vowel sound, you can hear a /w/ sound. Listen to these examples. Then listen again and repeat.

- to /w/ apply to /w/ eat to /w/ include
- to /w/ open to /w/ understand

6. Write in the /w/ sound in these sentences. Then listen and check.

1. I'd like to /w/ ask for a pay rise.
2. He promised to answer my call.
3. Do we need to employ anyone else?
4. Would you like to order now?
5. When do they want to interview you?

Vocabulary

7. Match to make six leisure activities.

| 1. cam | 2. eatin | 3. sunb | 4. ski | 5. sur | 6. swim |
|________|________|________|________|________|________|
| ing | ping | g out | ming | fing | athing |

8. Complete the sentences with a verb and a noun from the boxes.

- better exercise headache leg sick smoking weight

1. I've tried to __________________________ smoking three times now. But after three days I always start again.
2. My dog is so fat. He really needs to __________________________ some __________________________
3. A: How did Mike __________________________ his __________________________?
   B: He was playing football and fell badly.
4. I know that I should have a good diet and __________________________ regular __________________________ but it's so hard.
5. I ______________________ a terrible __________________________. Can I have a paracetamol?
6. What's the matter? Do you __________________________? We can stop the car if you want.
7. Take this medicine and it will help you to __________________________.

Listen again

9. Listen and number these events in order.

- have children
- be happy
- travel
- marry
- help children
- work
Presentation

You can ask someone to do something using verb + object + to-infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>to-infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tell</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>to photocopy this report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ask</td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>to photocopy this report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'d like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>to photocopy this report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'d like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>to photocopy this report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'d like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>wants</td>
<td>to photocopy this report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>needs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'d like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>wants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>needs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'d like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIP** Say *I want you to* ... (don’t say *I want that you* ...)

**Key vocabulary** Office tasks: book somebody a room, meet somebody at the airport, organise meetings, photocopy a report, send somebody a copy / an email, take somebody to the station

Exercises

1 Put the words in order.

1 him me phone tell to
2 ask come her my office to to
3 at be here tell them to six
4 a ask copy him me send to
5 give tell the them to money you
6 tell and her to come me see
7 photocopy Michelle to this ask
8 the station the at to driver tell stop

Tell him to phone me.
Choose the correct pronouns.

1 (He/ Him) asked she / (her) to send an email with this attachment.
2 Us / We told them / they to arrive at eight o'clock.
3 I / Me wanted him / he to meet we / us at the airport.
4 Them / They would like me / I to phone them / they this evening.
5 She / Her needs us / we to take she / her to the station.
6 He / Him would like I / me to meet they / them early tomorrow.
7 Do you / your need I / me to sign this?
8 How many cakes does she / her want he / him to make?

There are six mistakes in this email. Find and correct them.

New Message

To: Jens Norquist
Subject: various
From: Diane Fogel

You need to do:

There are a few things I need that you do.

First of all, Jack Greer from our New York office is going to visit you in September. He'd like that you book him a room in the Park Plaza for the night of the 27th.

Also, he wants you to organise meetings with all the people in your team for him.

Secondly, Marta Castro needs you to send her copies of the January reports.

Lastly, Paul McCann doesn't answer our emails or answer my phone calls. Can you ask him that calls me as soon as possible? Tell him to use my mobile (8796 543 643).

Thank you,

Diane

Rewrite the sentences with verb + object + to-infinitive. Then listen and check.

1 Photocopy this report.
   I'd like you to photocopy this report.

2 Mike, I spoke to the boss. Send a copy of the letter to him.
   The boss wants

3 Your secretary hasn't booked the hotel room. Can she do it now?
   Please ask

4 Meet us at the café on the corner and invite Jerry.
   Tell Jerry

5 Bring me another steak. This one tastes awful.
   I'd like
   This one tastes awful.
97 Infinitive of purpose

Presentation

You use the infinitive of purpose (to + verb) to say why a person does something.

All passengers must go to gate 20 immediately to board the plane.
I'm going to Florida to meet some clients in Miami.
I want to go Orlando to see Disneyland.
I'd like some perfume to give to my daughter for her birthday.

TIP The infinitive of purpose often answers the question Why?
In spoken English, you can answer the Why? question with To.

Why do you want to go to Orlando? To see Disneyland.

Exercises

1 Match 1–8 to a–h to make sentences. Then listen and check.

1 I'm going to Buckingham Palace  
2 They went to the butcher  
3 You need to study hard  
4 Leave early in the morning  
5 I want to buy an mp3 player  
6 I stopped at the garage  
7 We'd like a menu  
8 You should buy a new dress  

a to buy some meat.  
b to see the Queen.  
c to put petrol in the car.  
d to wear to the party.  
e to avoid the traffic.  
f to learn a language.  
g to take on holiday.  
h to see what's for lunch.
2 The word to is missing six times in the text. Write it in.

Join us on a cruise of the Mediterranean Sea to visit some of the most famous sites in the world.

**DAY ONE**
Fly to Venice meet the cruise liner *The Golden Angel:*

**DAY TWO**
Before we leave you'll have a few hours buy souvenirs from one of Italy's most famous cities. Then at midday, we leave for Athens. In the evening you can sit on the deck enjoy the sunset and the live entertainment.

**DAY THREE**
We arrive at the port of Piraeus take a tour of the city. We'll walk into town see the Acropolis and try some wonderful Greek food.

3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use the infinitive of purpose with the verb in brackets.

1 Why is she cycling? (get)  
She's cycling to get to school.

2 Why is he at the market? (buy)  

3 Why is he waiting? (catch)  

4 Why do you press this button? (take)  

5 Why did they go to the zoo? (see)  

6 Why did they fly into space in 1969? (land on)  

4 Complete these sentences about you using the infinitive of purpose.

1 I'm studying English to 

2 Last year I visited 

to 

3 Next year I'm going to 

to 

205
The tea is made by the host. Guests are invited into the room, or outside into a garden.

Hands are washed and shoes are removed.

Sometimes guests are served a simple small meal before the tea.

The table is prepared with a special tea bowl and the tea is placed in this.

A tea ceremony lasts between one and five hours.

**Presentation**

Use the passive form when you want to focus on the object not the subject (or person) of the active sentence. The object becomes the subject.

Active sentence: The host serves tea.

Passive sentence: Tea is served by the host.

Form the present simple passive with the verb to be (am/is/are) + past participle.

**Affirmative and negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tea</th>
<th>is (n't)</th>
<th>served in the garden.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guests</td>
<td>are (n't)</td>
<td>invited into the room.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>guests</th>
<th>invited to go?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>served in the garden?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 235: Irregular verbs

**Key vocabulary** Customs, traditions and ceremonies: birthday, cake, candles, fireworks, gifts, guests, host, meal
Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

1 Gifts are given on December 25th.
2 Candles put on a birthday cake.
3 Coffee served to guests.
4 Shoes left outside a person’s house.
5 Money left when children lose a tooth.
6 Fireworks lit on New Year’s Day.

Which of the statements 1–6 are true for your country?

2 Complete the text with the present simple passive form of the verbs. Then listen and check.

**IT’S A FACT!**

- Four main types of tea 1 *are grown* (grow) – green tea, black tea, oolong tea and white tea.
- Most tea 2 *pick* (pick) by hand and then it 3 *take* (take) to a factory.
- When the leaves 4 *dry* (dry) with hot air, they turn brown or black.
- Coffee 5 *not drink* (not drink) as much as tea around the world.
- Tea 6 *use* (use) as a medicine in some countries.

3 Write questions in the passive.

1 what / this machine / use for
   What is this machine used for?
2 how / this computer / switch on
3 what / make / with flour
4 how often / these rooms / clean
5 where / coffee beans / grow
6 when / the post / deliver
7 how / this word / pronounce
8 how much / know / about dinosaurs
The passive: past simple
The agent by

Here are some things you might not know ...

- White chocolate is not really chocolate because it isn’t made with cacao beans.
- The Mayan people grew cacao beans in 600AD. Cacao beans were used by them as a form of money.
- The Swiss eat more chocolate per person than any other country and over $13 billion per year is spent on chocolate by US consumers.
- Early explorers brought it to Europe and later it was taken to North America.

Presentation

Form the past simple passive with the verb to be (was/were) + past participle.

Chocolate was taken to North America.
Cacao beans were used as a form of money.
Where was chocolate discovered?

The agent

In the active form you know who did the action: Explorers brought chocolate to Europe.
In the passive we can say the agent (who did it) using by: Chocolate was brought to Europe by explorers.
The agent isn’t always necessary. This sentence is also possible: Chocolate was brought to Europe.

You don’t normally use the agent when the agent is ...

- obvious and therefore unnecessary: White chocolate isn’t made from cacao beans by chocolate makers.
- unknown: A piece of chocolate was left on my desk by someone.

Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms.

The potato ¹ discover / was discovered nearly 7,000 years ago. People in the Andes in South America ² grew / was grown the vegetable and it ³ ate / was eaten as a main part of their diet. It ⁴ arrived / was arrived in Europe in around 1570, but by the nineteenth century it ⁵ grew / was grown by many countries and it ⁶ became / was become the main vegetable in many countries.
2 Complete the text with the past simple active or passive form of the verbs. Then listen and check.

On the Road was written (write) in 1951 but it was not published until 1957. In 2005, it was chosen (chose) by Time Magazine as one of the best 100 English-language novels of the last century.

Jack Kerouac wrote (write) the book in only three weeks but he used (use) notes and diaries from seven years of travel across the USA. Often the names of real people and places change (change).

Many poets, writers and musicians say (say) the book was important to them. Bob Dylan said: 'It change (change) my life.'

In 2001, the original text was bought (buy) for $2.4 million.

3 Complete the quiz questions with the past simple passive form of the verbs. Can you answer the questions? (See the answers at the bottom of the page.)

Quiz

1. Who was Hamlet written (write) by?
2. Where was gunpowder invented (invent)?
3. How much was Russia paid (pay) by the USA for Alaska in 1867?
4. What were the first words spoken (speak) on the moon?
5. What year was Mount Everest first climbed (climb)?
6. Where was coffee first discovered (discover)?
7. The first plane was flown (fly) by which brothers in 1903?
8. Where were the Olympic games held (hold) in 2008?
9. When were seatbelts first used (use) in cars?
10. Who was the ball-point pen invented (invent) by?

4 We don’t always need the agent. Which agent (a or b) is necessary?

1. The President was shot ...
   a by someone.
   b by a man in a black suit and dark glasses.
2. Did you read the autobiography ...
   a by a writer.
   b by that Hollywood actress?
3. The painting was done ...
   a by a child aged nine.
   b by a painter.
4. The man was finally stopped for driving at 200 kilometres per hour ...
   a by six police cars!
   b by the police.
5. Was the car made ...
   a by a machine or by hand?
   b by something?
Review of units 96 to 100

Grammar

1 **Complete the conversation with the words in the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>wants</th>
<th>to (x2)</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Boss:** So, is there anything else?
**Assistant:** Yes, Mr Braun **wants** us to pick him up at the airport at five.

**Boss:** I see. OK, **Marco to pick him up, then.**

**Assistant:** I'm afraid Marco is going to the station to meet Ms Shimeald at the same time.

**Boss:** Well, we **someone to meet Mr Braun. Ask someone else in the office to**.

**Assistant:** And one last thing. We'd like to buy **to give Rosanne.**

**Boss:** Why?
**Assistant:** **celebrate her birthday.**

**Boss:** Really?
**Assistant:** Yes, and we’d like **to give us some money to pay for it.**

**Boss:** How much?

2 **Complete the sentences with the present or past simple passive form of the verbs.**

1 **Every year fires are burnt (burn) on November 5th in England.**

2 **New Year always (celebrate) on a different day in China.**

3 **In Japan the main guest for a meal sits in the centre and (serve) first.**

4 **Before 1972, Sri Lanka (call) Ceylon.**

5 **The scientist Louis Pasteur (be born) in France in 1822.**

6 **Slovakia (join) to the Czech Republic until 1993.**

7 **Tagalog (speak) in the Philippines.**

3 **Write three similar facts about your country. Use the passive.**

1

2

3

4 **Rewrite the sentences and questions using the present or past simple passive.**

1 **They built the Eiffel Tower in 1889.**
   The Eiffel Tower **was built in 1889.**

2 **You make pasta with flour and eggs.**
   Pasta **is made with flour and eggs.**

3 **How do you grow cotton?**
   How **is cotton grown?**

4 **Someone left a message on your desk.**
   A message **was left on your desk.**

5 **When did you send the letter?**
   When **was the letter sent?**

6 **Brazilians don’t speak Spanish. They speak Portuguese.**
   Spanish **is not spoken by Brazilians.**

7 **My employer pays me £500 a week.**
   I **am paid £500 a week.**

8 **We deliver packages all over the world.**
   Packages **are delivered all over the world.**

9 **The weather was bad but it didn’t delay our plane.**
   The weather **was bad but our plane wasn’t delayed.**
5 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1. Tell she to give me a call.

2. We’re going to the theatre for to watch a play.

3. I need you copy this report.

4. Do you want him to send I an email?

5. Them would like to meet us at the station.

6. How many of these do you want buy from us?

7. Is Angie there? Tell to come and see me straight away.

8. Water are heated to 100 degrees.

9. How many different languages are taught in your school?

10. This building designed by a famous architect in 1999.

11. A famous architect was designed this city.

12. No one knows when the wheel was invent.

Pronunciation: past participles

6 Listen to the pronunciation of these past participles. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-grown</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>brought</th>
<th>told</th>
<th>left</th>
<th>lit</th>
<th>paid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>worn</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary

7 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

- book
- meet
- photocopy
- send
- take

1. Could you ______ this report and give a copy to Ms Barker?
2. Please ______ him an email with this attachment.
3. Did you ______ the room for our meeting?
4. He lands at three. Can you ______ him at the airport?
5. I need a taxi to ______ me to the station.

Listen again

8 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When was the book *On the Road* published?
   - 1957

2. Which magazine chose it as one of the best novels of the last century?

3. How quickly was the book written?

4. What did Bob Dylan say it changed?

5. How much was the original book bought for?
1 Progress test (Units 1 to 10)

1 I ______ from Italy.
   a am   b is   c are

2 Ray and Maria ______ eighteen.
   a am   b is   c are

3 She ______ married.
   a 'm   b 's   c 're

4 We ______ single.
   a 'm   b 's   c 're

5 This picture is nice. It ______ from Brazil.
   a 'm   b 's   c 're

6 I ______ thirty. I'm thirty-one.
   a 'm not   b isn't   c aren't

7 They ______ from Chile. They're from Argentina.
   a am not   b isn't   c aren't

8 'Is Andrew British?' 'No, he ______.'
   a aren't   b isn't   c is

9 He's ______ doctor.
   a a   b an   c Ø

10 We're ______ teachers.
   a a   b an   c Ø

11 Pablo is ______ artist.
   a a   b an   c Ø

12 The three brothers are ______.
   a engineer   b engineers   c an engineers

13 They're Chinese. They ______ Japanese.
   a no   b not   c aren't

14 ______ it three o'clock?
   a Am   b Is   c Are

15 Tom and Liz from Sydney?
   a Am   b Is   c Are

16 'Are you Polish?' 'Yes, I ______.'
   a am   b is   c are

17 ______ the Eiffel tower in Paris?
   a Am   b Is   c Are

18 'Are you and Jenna married?' 'Yes, ______.'
   a it is   b we are   c they are

19 They are ______.
   a fasts cars   b fast cars   c cars fast

20 Your son ______ short. He's tall.
   a isn't   b is   c aren't

21 Matilda is ______ young nurse.
   a a   b an   c Ø

22 Leah and Monika are ______ French teachers.
   a a   b an   c Ø

23 They're ______ fast motorbikes.
   a a   b an   c Ø

24 W. B. Yeats is ______ Irish writer.
   a a   b an   c Ø

25 Where are ______ car keys?
   a a   b an   c the

26 ______ the books on the chair?
   a Am   b Is   c Are

27 The phone is ______ the table.
   a on   b in   c to

28 ______ is the phone?' 'It's on the table.'
   a What   b Where   c Who
29 Your wallet is ______ to the bag.
   a in     b on       c next

30 ______ my bags?
   a Where's    b Where are    c Are where

31 There ______ two sofas in the room.
   a am     b is       c are

32 No, there ______ a chair in the bedroom.
   a is     b isn't     c aren't

33 ______ there a café near here?
   a Are     b Is       c Am

34 There are ______ sofas in my living room.
   a a      b one      c two

35 The sofa is ______ the two windows.
   a in     b between    c on

36 'Is there a cash machine near here?'
   'Yes, ______.'
   a there's    b there is    c there are

37 There ______ any money in my wallet.
   a am not   b isn't      c aren't

38 There's a chair ______ the corner of the room.
   a of      b on       c in

39 There are some pens ______ my desk.
   a between  b on       c in front

40 The cinema is ______ the taxi rank and the bus station.
   a between  b under    c in front

41 There's a cash machine ______ Regent Street.
   a in      b at        c of

42 The museum is ______ of the train station.
   a between  b behind   c in front

43 There's ______ apple in my bag.
   a a       b an       c some

44 There are ______ biscuits in the cupboard.
   a a       b an       c some

45 Sorry, there isn't ______ milk.
   a a       b some     c any

46 ______ there any bread?
   a Is       b Are     c Some

47 Is there ______ banana in the kitchen?
   a a       b an       c some

48 There are ______ eggs.
   a any     b some      c an

49 There's a ______ on the table.
   a milk    b biscuit   c bread

50 There isn't any ______.
   a sugar    b apples    c eggs
2 Progress test (Units 11 to 20)

1. My brother _____ got a new bicycle.
   a. have    b. has    c. is

2. We _____ got a cold.
   a. 've    b. 's    c. is

3. He _____ got brown eyes.
   a. 've    b. 's    c. has

4. They haven't got _____ children.
   a. a    b. some    c. any

5. She _____ got a car.
   a. hasn't    b. haven't    c. isn't

6. _____ you got a bicycle?
   a. Is    b. Has    c. Have

7. 'Has Michael got dark hair?'
   'No, he _____ . He's got blond hair.]
   a. hasn't    b. haven't    c. hasn't got

8. I _____ 32.
   a. 've    b. 've got    c. 'm

9. That's my sister. _____ name is Ana.
   a. His    b. Her    c. Its

10. Have you got _____ camera?
    a. you    b. you're    c. your

11. My father is from Argentina but _____ parents are from Spain.
    a. his    b. her    c. their

12. _____ house is in the city centre.
    a. Are    b. Our    c. We

13. Paris is beautiful. It's famous for _____ art and museums.
    a. its    b. it's    c. it

14. _____ son's a teacher.
    a. Their    b. They're    c. They

15. _____ 've got a passport.
    a. I    b. He    c. My

16. _____ coat is Peter's.
    a. That    b. These    c. Those

17. _____ trainers are new.
    a. This    b. That    c. These

18. Is _____ your pen?
    a. this    b. that's    c. these

19. Which _____ is his car?
    a. one    b. ones    c. this

20. 'Whose is it?' 'It's _____ .'

21. 'Whose is this camera?' 'It's _____ !
    a. my    b. me    c. mine

22. Karen and Fred have got a blue car. Is this _____ car?
    a. there    b. they're    c. their

23. _____ English lessons are long.
    a. Our    b. Ours    c. Our's

24. That's _____ teacher.
    a. Lisas    b. Lisa's    c. Lisas'

25. Those books are _____ .
    a. he's    b. he    c. his

26. We _____ in New York.
    a. live    b. lives    c. are live

27. She _____ work at five.
    a. finish    b. finishes    c. finishes
Jack  geology at university.  

a study  b studies  c studys

I  homework after school.  

a do  b does  c dos

They  a break at twelve o'clock.  

a has  b have  c got

I'm from the USA I live in Australia.  

a and  b but  c

I  like pizza.  

a no  b don't  c doesn't

He  the new girl in our class.  

a like  b likes  c don't like

doesn't like

sushi?  

a You like  b Does you like  c Do you like

Does your friend  horror films?  

a like  b likes  c liking

He likes her but she doesn't like .  

a he  b him  c his

That music is great. I love .  

a it  b its  c it's

doesn't love

live next to a famous person.  

a We  b Our  c Us

'Do you like this picture?'  

'Yes, he's  favourite artist.'  

a me  b my  c mine

40 I  early for school.  

a always am  b always  c 'm always

41 They  TV.  

a never watch  b watch never  c never watches

42 Rich and Jenny don't  see each other now.  

a sometimes  b never  c often

43 '  go to the opera?' 'No, never.'  

a Do you ever  b Ever you  c Do ever

44 'What  the capital of Australia?' 'Canberra.'  

a is  b do  c does

45  often do you go to the cinema?  

a Why  b How  c When

46 What time  your mother start work?  

a is  b do  c does

47 When  their birthdays?  

a is  b are  c does

48 Who  you live with?  

a are  b do  c does

49  long is the Amazon River?  

a What  b How  c Where

50  one do you want?  

a Which  b When  c How
Progress test (Units 21 to 30)

1. Can you _____ French?
   a speaks  b speak  c to speak

2. I can't play the piano. _____ you?
   a Can  b Can't  c Do can

3. Hilary can't sing but she _____ play the guitar.
   a can  b cans  c does can

4. She can't sing _____.
   a not very well  b very well  c not well

5. Roger Federer _____ play tennis very well.
   a can  b cans  c does can

6. _____ she like tennis?
   a Can  b Do  c Does

7. They _____ play football very well.
   a don't can  b doesn't can  c can't

8. _____ play a musical instrument?
   a Does he can  b Can he  c Do he can

9. They _____ speak any languages.
   a doesn't can  b can't  c don't can

10. 'Can you run fast?' 'No, I _____.'
    a can't  b don't  c can

11. 'Can I get _____ a drink?' 'Yes, please.'
    a me  b you  c my

12. Can you pass _____ the salt, please?
    a me  b you  c it

13. _____ ask you a question?
    a Can I  b Can you  c Do I

14. 'Can I have a drink?' 'Yes, _____.'
    a please  b certainly  c thanks very much

15. _____ help me?
    a Can me  b Can I  c Can you

16. Can I _____ your car?
    a borrow  b lend  c would

17. Hello, we _____ a table for two, please.
    a like  b 'd like  c would

18. ‘_____ you like some sushi?’ ‘Yes, please.’
    a Do  b Would  c can

19. ‘Would you like some wine?’ ‘No, thanks. _____ like some water.’
    a I  b I'd  c Please

20. ‘_____ the menu now?’ ‘Yes, please.’
    a Would you like  b You like  c Do you like

21. We'd like _____ tea, please.
    a a  b some  c any

22. The light's red. _____!
    a Stop  b Stop you  c You stop

23. Come in. _____ a seat.
    a Takes  b Take  c Take you

24. _____ turn left here. Turn right.
    a Doesn't  b No  c Don't

25. I have two sisters. They are _____ than me.
    a young  b younger  c more young

26. This one is _____ than that one.
    a expensive  b expensiver  c more expensive

27. My English is _____ than yours.
    a good  b gooder  c better
1. Is his brother older than me?
a as b any c than

2. A bicycle is expensive than a car.
a more b less c as

3. That's a really idea.
a bad b badder c worse

4. Are you in your new home?
a happyer b happier c hapier

5. It's cold here. The weather is in my country.
a hoter b hotter c hot

6. You are beautiful than ever!
a the b most c more

7. Her new book is interesting than the others.
I can't finish it.
a more b less c most

8. Cheetahs can run than crocodiles.
a fast b faster c fastest

9. The tortoise lives the of all animals.
a long b longer c longest

10. Crocodiles are dangerous b more dangerous c most dangerous

11. The blue whale is heaviest animal in the world.
a O b a c the

12. This was the day ever!
a good b better c best

13. My Spanish is than yours.
a worse b worst c the worse

14. This animal is the heavy of the three.
a less b least c more

15. This table is bigger mine at home.
a than b as c to

16. Normally, the nightclubs are than this.
a crowded b more crowded c most crowded

17. Paris is beautiful than I remember.
a most b much c more

18. I get up than anyone else in my house.
a early b earlier c earliest

19. He drives very .
a slow b fastly c slowly

20. They are married.
a happy b happily c happier

21. We'll be late. Drive !
a quick b more quickly c quicklier

22. How do you play tennis? You can't be as bad as me!
a bad b badly c worse

23. She can .
a well play b play good c play well
Right now, I ______ cooking dinner for some friends.  
| a 'm | b 's | c 're |

At the moment, they ______ visiting friends.  
| a 'm | b 's | c 're |

She always ______ a bath in the morning.  
| a has | b have | c are having |

______ you ______ chess?  
| a Are ... play | b do ... playing | c Are ... playing |

'Is she reading anything interesting?'  
'No, she ______.'  
| a aren't | b isn't | c isn't reading |

What ______ he ______ now?  
| a are ... doing | b is ... doing | c is ... do |

'Are you busy?' 'No, I ______ TV.'  
| a watch | b watching | c 'm watching |

Jane ______ in a hotel near the station this week.  
| a stay | b stays | c 's staying |

Sorry I ______ late.  
| a 'm | b 'm being | c being |

It ______ today. It's sunny.  
| a 's raining | b isn't raining | c doesn't rain |

______ rock or jazz?  
| a Do you like | b Are you liking | c Liking you |

We can't come now. We ______ some work.  
| a do | b 're doing | c does |

______ the children playing?' 'A computer game.'  
| a What are | b Are | c What do |

Anne and Andrew ______ the new James Bond film this evening.  
| a are seeing | b see | c is seeing |

'Can we meet on Saturday?'  
'Sure, I ______ anything.'  
| a don't do | b 'm not doing | c not doing |

______ free next week?  
| a Are you doing | b You | c Are you |

My son and his friends are ______ travel around New Zealand.  
| a go to | b going | c going to |

Are you going ______ us tonight?  
| a to join | b join | c to joining |

What ______ do about your exam results?  
| a are you going to | b do you go to | c do you |

I have an arrangement with Bill. We ______ at si:  
| a are meet | b 're meeting | c 're going meet |

'What are you going to do when you finish school?'  
'I ______ engineering at university.'  
| a 'm studying | b 'm going to study | c study |

I ______ really busy at work last week.  
| a was | b were | c am |

They ______ at home yesterday.  
| a wasn't | b weren't | c don't were |

Sam and Matt at the party?  
| a Wasn't | b Was | c Were |

'Was it your birthday last month?' 'Yes, it ______.'  
| a was | b were | c am |
26 Our anniversary ___ on 25th April.
a was   b were   c weren’t

27 ‘___ your weekend?’ ‘Fine, thanks.’
a What was   b How was   c Who was

28 When I was a child, ___ a park here.
a there’s   b there was   c there were

29 ‘___ a busy road here?’ ‘No, it was quiet.’
a Was there   b Were there   c Is there

30 ‘Were there any trees?’ ‘No, ___.’
a there wasn’t   b there weren’t   c there were

31 I think ___ some skyscrapers over here.
a there’s   b there were   c there was

32 ‘___ you play the piano when you were a child?’ ‘Yes, but not very well.’
a Can   b Could   c Do

33 Mozart ___ play the organ as a child.
a can   b were   c could

34 Sorry, I ___ hear you. Please say that again.
a could   b couldn’t   c can

35 ___ Beethoven a composer?
a Could   b Was   c Can

36 How ___ Picasso paint?
a well   b far could   c well could

37 ___ you run when you were young?
a How far could   b How   c How far

38 ‘Could Helen Keller hear when she was a child?’ ‘No, she ___.’
a could   b couldn’t   c wasn’t

39 She ___ sing very well.
a could   b coulds   c could to

40 ___ your name, please?
a Could I have   b Could I having   c Could have

41 Could you ___ that?
a spelling   b spell me   c to spell

42 ___ you like to leave a message?
a Do   b Would   c Could

43 Would you ___ help me?
a like   b like to   c liking

44 ___ I speak to Ms Blumer, please?
a Would   b Could   c Do

45 ‘___ I email the document, please?’ ‘Sure.’
a Would   b Do   c Can

46 Could you give ___ your number?
a I   b you   c me

47 Can you tell ___ Rosanne called?
a to him   b him   c you

48 Sorry, I ___ come to your party last week.
a can’t   b couldn’t   c wasn’t

49 ‘___ some pizza?’ ‘Yes, please.’
a Would you like   b Do you like   c Would you like to

50 ‘Would you like to come out tonight?’ ‘___’
a No, I wouldn’t.
b Thanks, but I can’t. I’m going to the cinema.
c Yes, I’d like.
   a was    b were    c could

2. The students _____ this course last May.
   a start    b started    c are starting

3. We _____ Maths for four years.
   a study    b studied    c studied

4. The train _____ at the station.
   a stoped    b stopped    c stop

5. Could you _____ the saxophone when you were a boy?
   a play    b played    c are playing

6. Did they _____ to China last year?
   a travel    b travelled    c travelling

7. My parents _____ in a small house near Lyon in France. They love it there!
   a live    b lived    c is living

8. Sheila _____ from college with a degree in nursing in 2006.
   a qualify    b is qualifying    c qualified

9. The team _____ to the hotel at midnight.
   a get    b got    c goted

10. We _____ some sightseeing after the shops closed.
    a do    b does    c did

11. At the restaurant, Norman _____ the local food but I _____ a burger.
    a eat ... had    b ate ... have    c ate ... had

12. The girl _____ in the sun for hours and _____ red!
    a sat ... went    b sit ... go    c sit ... went

13. I _____ see her at the lesson. Is she OK?
    a don't    b doesn't    c didn't

14. Sorry, we _____ your letter. Can you send it again
    a didn't received    b didn't receive    c no receive

15. Did you _____ school at sixteen or eighteen?
    a leave    b leaved    c left

16. Did Ingrid have any children? Yes, she _____.
    a was    b did    c didn't

17. ' _____ you stay at the conference?' ‘At the Ritz Hotel.’
    a Where do    b Where did    c What did

18. How _____ the hotel?
    a was    b did    c did

19. Who _____ with you?
    a did you go    b go    c went

20. What _____ you do last night?
    a do    b were    c did

21. 'What time _____?' ‘She left at nine.’
    a she leave    b did she leave    c she left

22. I'm afraid there _____ time to see Liza.
    a didn't    b wasn't    c did

23. Who _____ this? It’s beautiful!
    a make    b did make    c made

24. ‘Who _____ here?’ ‘Picasso did.’
    a did live    b lives    c lived

25. Did you _____ the palace?
    a like    b likes    c liked

26. You _____ switch off your mobile phone here.
    a must    b musts    c must to

27. You _____ drive faster than 70 mph in the UK.
    a don't must    b mustn't    c didn't must
28 The doctors says I ______ eat more fruit and fewer sweets.
   a must       b mustn’t       c must to
29 All employees ______ to wash their hands.
   a must       b have       c has
30 Quick! We ______ be late for the start of the film.
   a don’t must   b mustn’t       c don’t have to
31 You ______ wear a uniform. You can wear your normal clothes.
   a have to       b don’t have to       c don’t have
32 When a customer walks in, the waiter ______ to be polite.
   a has got       b have       c must
33 ______ to get up early?
   a Do you have       b Have you       c Must you
34 ‘Does she have to come too?’ ‘Yes, she _______.’
   a has       b does       c do
35 I like this dress. What do you think? ______ I buy it?
   a Would       b Should       c Could
36 The police ______ stop those cars.
   a should       b shoulds       c should to
37 You ______ do that. It’s dangerous.
   a don’t should   b shouldn’t       c shouldn’t to
38 I couldn’t come to the party. I ______ study for my exam.
   a have to       b had to       c musted
39 We always ______ do what the teachers say at my school.
   a have to       b had       c musted
40 They ______ to study. There wasn’t an exam that week.
   a hadn’t       b didn’t have       c have
41 ______ to ask Rita and Paul. They are so boring!
   a Did you have       b Had you       c Have
42 ______ we eat now? I’m very hungry.
   a Have       b Must       c Could
43 I ______ walk for six months when I was younger.
   a mustn’t       b shouldn’t       c couldn’t
44 They ______ turn left on that road.
   a mustn’t       b hadn’t       c don’t had
45 We ______ get a qualification. It isn’t necessary for the job.
   a couldn’t       b mustn’t       c don’t have to
46 You ______ call your mother. She would like to speak to you.
   a would       b had to       c should
47 ‘______ I borrow my dad’s car?’ ‘Yes, that’s a good idea.’
   a Must       b Should       c Would
48 ‘Why ______ stop?’ ‘There’s a red light.’
   a should you       b could you       c did you have to
49 Hello, Tourist Information. ______ I help you?
   a Can       b Would       c Must
50 My doctor’s appointment is in five minutes. We ______ leave right now.
   a have       b must       c could
### Progress test (Units 51 to 60)

1. I ______ the kitchen so you can cook dinner now.
   - a) 've cleaned
   - b) clean
   - c) 's cleaned

2. Marie ______ to meet her new boyfriend I think.
   - a) has went
   - b) has go
   - c) has gone

3. ______ you tidied your bedroom?
   - a) Have
   - b) Did
   - c) Are

4. Has the visitor arrived? Yes, he ______.
   - a) has
   - b) have
   - c) arrived

5. Good news! Tracey called. She's ______ passed her final test.
   - a) yet
   - b) already
   - c) just

6. No, I haven't decided ______.
   - a) just
   - b) already
   - c) yet

7. Don't worry about the ironing. Your mother's ______ done it. She was here this morning.
   - a) just
   - b) already
   - c) yet

8. Has the President made a decision ______?
   - a) just
   - b) already
   - c) yet

9. I'm afraid ______ yet.
   - a) they've arrived
   - b) they haven't arrived
   - c) have they arrived

10. The police ______ to check the building.
    - a) have just been
    - b) haven't just been
    - c) have been

11. The company has produced clocks ______ over fifty years.
    - a) for
    - b) since
    - c) yet

12. There haven't been any visitors ______ this morning.
    - a) for
    - b) since
    - c) yet

13. They've ______ got married. That's great news!
    - a) just
    - b) for
    - c) since

14. ______ has he been a doctor?
    - a) How much
    - b) How many
    - c) How long

15. They haven't won a game ______ 1985.
    - a) for
    - b) since
    - c) already

16. I haven't seen you ______ ages. You look well!
    - a) yet
    - b) for
    - c) since

17. ______ been to Russia?
    - a) How long
    - b) Have you ever
    - c) How

18. Have you ______ eaten tofu?
    - a) ever
    - b) never
    - c) yet

19. No, she's ______ failed an exam in her life.
    - a) ever
    - b) never
    - c) just

20. Marjorie has ______ to Scotland twice before.
    - a) been
    - b) gone
    - c) went

21. Where's Roger ______? I can't find him.
    - a) been
    - b) went
    - c) gone

22. My family ______ to Hawaii last month.
    - a) been
    - b) gone
    - c) went

23. I've ______ my tea. Could I have another cup, please?
    - a) drink
    - b) drank
    - c) drunk

24. ______ the show about whales on TV last night?
    - a) Have you seen
    - b) Have you ever seen
    - c) Did you see

25. 'Did you have time for a break?' 'Yes, I ______.'
    - a) 've had
    - b) did
    - c) had

26. 'Have you got a driving licence?' 'No, I ______.'
    - a) haven't
    - b) hadn't
    - c) didn't

27. They ______ walking home when they saw the accident.
    - a) was
    - b) wasn't
    - c) were
Can we meet ______ lunch? I don't have time to talk now.
   a after     b when     c but

I hated Maths at school ______ I loved Science.
   a so       b before    c but

______ I was walking to work, it started to rain.
   a Before    b Because   c While

______ you get to the station, give me a call.
   a Because    b When      c While

We took the bus ______ it was cheaper than the train.
   a because    b but       c so

The TV didn't work ______ I had to buy another one.
   a before     b so        c when

Jean ______ long hair but it's quite short now.
   a have      b was having  c used to have

Did you ______ walk to school?
   a used to    b use to     c use

My brothers ______ help in my father's shop.
   a used to    b use to     c use

The journey ______ to take very long.
   a didn't use b didn't use c no use

I ______ newspapers every morning when I was a teenager.
   a use to deliver b deliver  c delivered
7 Progress test (Units 61 to 70)

1 of the students were married - about 45%.
  a All b Most c Some

2 students must register at reception.
  a All b All of c Some of

3 the people here is under 16.
  a Some b Most c None of

4 Everyone passed - and scored over 90% as well.
  a most of b most of you c none

5 of them are studying Spanish but most are studying English.
  a None b All c Some

6 I think everyone has worked hard. of them was lazy.
  a None b All c Some

7 There are lots of messages for you today.
   Everybody to speak to you.
  a want b wants c have wanted

8 There's than Rome for a weekend break. It's wonderful.
  a everywhere b nowhere c anywhere

9 I think there's at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
  a somebody b anybody c everybody

10 Was there for me in the post today?
  a anything b everything c nothing

11 has seen my bag. I don't know where I left it.
  a No one b Someone c Anyone

13 'Do you like Bryan and Bob?' 'Yes, I like them.'
  a any b most c both

14 apple pie or strawberry cake is fine for dessert.
  a Either b Neither c Any

15 students are very happy. They passed all their exams.
  a Either b Neither c Both

16 'Is answer A or B correct?' because the answer is C.
  a Either b Both c Neither

17 How milk have we got?
  a many b much c any

18 How cakes are there?
  a many b much c any

19 Is there chocolate left or have we eaten it all?
  a many b much c any

20 Look in the cupboards. There are tins in there.
  a much b a lot of c any

21 children don't like vegetables but Billy does.
  a Much b A lot of c Any

22 How much have we got?
  a people b coins c time

23 How many work here?
  a people b employee c mans

24 Do you have bread?
  a many b any c a lot
information on the internet is incorrect.
  a Many  b Any  c A lot of

I'm going to be ______ famous film star when I grow up.
  a a  b an  c the

I'm sure Madonna lives in ______ enormous house.
  a a  b an  c the

My doctor says I should take ______ regular exercise.
  a a  b Ø  c the

There's ______ Australian actor in this film.
  a a  b Ø  c an

United States of America has 50 states.
  a A  b Ø  c The

Leonid Stadnyk is the tallest man in ______ world.
  a a  b Ø  c the

How fast does ______ sun go round ______ moon.
  a a...the  b the...the  c the...Ø

Would you like ______ menu?
  a a  b Ø  c an

Can you play ______ guitar?
  a a  b Ø  c the

______ walk slowly but they live a long time.
  a Tortoises  b The tortoise  c A tortoise

'Can I borrow your pen?' 'Sorry, but this is ______ only one I've got.'
  a a  b Ø  c the

'Is there ______ train now?' 'No, the next one is at six o'clock.'
  a a  b Ø  c the

What time does ______ plane to Lima leave?
  a a  b Ø  c the

Would you like ______ window seat or ______ aisle seat?
  a a...an  b an...a  c an...an

Can you open ______ door for me? I haven't got a key.
  a a  b Ø  c the

Who's ______ man over there with black hair? He's famous, isn't he?
  a Ø  b the  c a

My grandmother loves ______ cats. She's got twenty-one of them!
  a a  b Ø  c the

We travelled for six days on ______ foot and by camel.
  a a  b Ø  c the

We're studying the history of the Romans at ______ school.
  a Ø  b the  c a

Our teacher always gives us ______ difficult exercises for homework.
  a Ø  b a  c the

My cousin is ______ engineer.
  a a  b Ø  c an

These are some of ______ oldest books in the world.
  a a  b Ø  c the

I'm ______ Australian citizen.
  a an  b Ø  c a

My degree is in ______ French and German.
  a the  b Ø  c a

The gallery is in the centre of ______ Berlin.
  a a  b Ø  c the
Progress test (Units 71 to 80)

1. I think we ______ have cars that fly in the future.
   a. will  
   b. wills  
   c. will to

2. How old will you ______ in the year 2050?
   a. are  
   b. being  
   c. be

3. 'Will you tell them?' 'Yes, I ______.'
   a. 'll  
   b. will tell  
   c. will

4. Sorry, but I ______ be there tonight. I have to work.
   a. will  
   b. won't  
   c. 'll

5. What time ______?
   a. will Toby arrive  
   b. Toby will arrive  
   c. will arrive Toby

6. I think I ______ have the steak.
   a. 'll  
   b. 'm going  
   c. going to

7. When Mandy leaves school, she ______ train to be a hairdresser.
   a. 'll  
   b. 's going to  
   c. 's

8. We ______ the Rolling Stones. I've got an extra ticket. Would you like to come too?
   a. 'll see  
   b. 're going to see  
   c. see

9. '______ when you get to Delhi?' 'I don't know yet. I'm still planning the trip.'
   a. What are you doing  
   b. What are you going to do  
   c. What you will do

10. 'I didn't get the email you sent' 'Don't worry, I ______ it again.'
    a. 'll send  
    b. 'm going to send  
    c. 'm sending

11. I ______ I'll have a cup of tea.
    a. 'm think  
    b. 'm going  
    c. think

12. 'Can I talk to Bryan?' 'Sorry, he ______ a meeting at the moment.'
    a. 'll have  
    b. 's going to have  
    c. 's having

13. Which one ______ buy?
    a. are you  
    b. will  
    c. are you going

14. What's Sammy ______ when he's older?
    a. going to do  
    b. will do  
    c. going

15. 'Do you want to have lunch with me?' 'Sorry but I ______ my parents for lunch today.'
    a. meet  
    b. 'm meeting  
    c. 'll meet

16. It's possible Mike ______ me. Can you take a message, please?
    a. will call  
    b. 's calling  
    c. calls

17. 'Tell me about your holiday. What's your plan?' 'First, we ______ to Krakow ...'
    a. 're going to fly  
    b. 'll fly  
    c. 're fly

18. No, I ______ help! I don't want to!
    a. will  
    b. won't  
    c. 'm not

19. There's a problem today and the bus to London ______ to stop here.
    a. won't  
    b. isn't go  
    c. isn't going

20. ______ you tell her or do you want me to?
    a. Are  
    b. 's going to  
    c. Will

21. My birthday is ______ 19th June.
    a. in  
    b. on  
    c. at

22. My wedding anniversary is ______ April.
    a. in  
    b. on  
    c. at

23. The party starts ______ nine o'clock.
    a. in  
    b. on  
    c. at

24. The last time I saw them was ______ 2004 I think.
    a. in  
    b. on  
    c. at

25. Everyone is arriving ______ the same time.
    a. in  
    b. on  
    c. at
3. All the flowers come up ___ the spring.
   a in    b on    c at

7. Let’s meet ___ the afternoon. How about three?
   a in . . . at   b in . . . in   c at . . . in

8. There’s a farmer’s market ___ the first Saturday of each month.
   a in    b on    c at

9. Music was much better ___ the sixties.
   a in    b on    c at

10. It’s too hot to go outside ___ the middle of the day in summer.
    a in    b on    c at

11. The film finishes ___ about ten thirty.
    a in    b on    c at

12. We always visit our grandparents ___ Friday afternoons.
    a in    b on    c at

13. ‘Where are the children?’ ‘I think they’re ___ the bedroom.’
    a in    b on    c at

14. There’s someone ___ the front door.
    a in    b on    c at

15. Your car keys are ___ the table.
    a in    b on    c at

16. Turn right and the police station is ___ the left.
    a in    b on    c at

17. There’s a bag ___ the table. Is it yours?
    a between   b under  c at

39. Go straight ahead and the swimming pool is ___ of the restaurant.
    a in front   b behind  c opposite

40. He’s the person ___ does the photocopying.
    a which   b who    c he

41. Rachel is the teacher ___ likes to give tests.
    a which   b that    c she

42. ‘What do you call the machine ___ boils water?’ ‘A kettle.’
    a which   b who    c it

43. This is the cable ___ connects the computer to the printer.
    a that    b who    c where

44. This is the DVD ___ last week.
    a who we watched   b that we watched   c which watched

45. She’s the woman ___ at the local hospital.
    a works    b who works  c which works

46. Do you like the book ___ you?
    a who I gave   b I gave  c gave

47. Do you want to see the photos ___ on holiday?
    a when we took  b who we took  c that we took

48. ‘Who is the person ___ the Harry Potter books?’ ‘J.K. Rowling.’
    a which wrote  b that wrote  c wrote

49. I’m studying the same course ___ last year.
    a who you did   b you did   c which

50. Who is the man ___ that awful yellow car?
    a that owns    b owns    c which owns
Progress test (Units 81 to 90)

1. When you ______ this button, it switches the TV on.
   a) press  b) will press  c) pressed

2. If anyone ______, please tell them I’m out.
   a) ask  b) asks  c) will ask

3. If the alarm goes off, ______ the building.
   a) please leave  b) left  c) you leave

4. If you heat water ______ hot.
   a) , it gets  b) it gets  c) it get

5. The engine ______ you press this switch.
   a) starts, if  b) starts if  c) start,

6. Don’t cross the road ______ the policeman says you can.
   a) unless  b) if  c) when

7. ______ hear the fire alarm, walk to the nearest exit.
   a) Unless you  b) You  c) If you

8. ______ the police unless it’s a real emergency.
   a) Call  b) When you call  c) Don’t call

9. If you drive faster, we ______ there by this evening.
   a) get  b) ’ll get  c) ’re getting

10. ______ we walk this way, will we reach the top of the mountain?
    a) If  b) When  c) While

11. Unless we book it now, there ______ any tickets left for the concert.
    a) will be  b) won’t be  c) are

12. If I have any free time this afternoon, ______ you.
    a) I help  b) I’ll help  c) help

13. ______ at the lights if they turn red.
    a) Stop  b) Will stop  c) Stops

14. When they ______ this song, I have to dance!
    a) sing  b) ’ll sing  c) ’re going to sing

15. They’ll meet us at the Blue Moon café ______ you know a better place.
    a) if  b) when  c) unless

16. I’m sure if the bus is late, they ______ take a taxi.
    a) ’ll  b) might  c) should

17. When the teacher asks you a question, you ______ answer.
    a) could  b) can  c) have to

18. ______ you pick him up if he calls? I’m too busy to do it I’m afraid.
    a) Could  b) Must  c) Should

19. We ______ miss the film if we don’t leave now. Let’s go!
    a) have to  b) might  c) should

20. If they want to see the Picasso exhibition, they ______ need to reserve tickets in advance. I’m not sure.
    a) can  b) must  c) might

21. I think you ______ use a credit card or cash when you pay for the tickets. It doesn’t matter.
    a) will  b) can  c) must

22. When the alarm starts, everyone ______ walk outside and wait in the car park.
    a) must  b) can  c) could

23. When you visit my country, you ______ bring warm clothing. It gets very cold at night.
    a) might  b) could  c) should

24. If you don’t have any money, I ______ lend you some. It isn’t a problem for me.
    a) have to  b) can  c) must
If you buy a lottery ticket, you ______ win a million!

If you buy a lottery ticket, you ______ win a million!
a could  b have to  c won't
I was really ______ when Gill told me she was leaving.
a surprised  b surprising
They’re late again. How ______!
a annoyed  b annoying
This part of the film is really ______. I’ve seen it six times.
a excited  b exciting

Look out! Here comes the ______ part with Dracula.
a frightened  b frightening
'Do you find this kind of book ______?'
'No, not very.'
a interested  b interesting

Don’t be ______. We’ll be fine.
a worried  b worrying

He looks really ______. It’s time for his bed.
a tired  b tiring

Why do you ______ so sad? What’s the problem?
a look  b smell  c taste

Wow! This cake ______ delicious.
a feels  b tastes  c sounds

'How does it ______?' ‘Very soft.’
a smell  b feel  c taste

I love jazz but rock ______ awful.
a looks  b feels  c sounds

Your new girlfriend looks very ______.
a beauty  b beautiful  c beautifully

This soup ______ hot and spicy. What’s in it?
a smells  b feels  c tastes

39 Try this perfume. It ______ really fresh.
a smells  b feels  c tastes

40 I think you should buy that ______.
a beautiful old table  b old table beautiful  c old beautiful table

41 There’s a ______ bowl in the kitchen. Can you get it for me?
a wooden small round  b round small wooden  c small round wooden

42 Whose is that ______ ball in the garden?
a huge green plastic  b green plastic huge  c plastic green huge

43 My dream car is a(n) ______ sports car. What about you?
a stylish Italian red  b Italian stylish red  c stylish red Italian

44 Are you good ______ painting?
a about  b by  c at

45 I’m bored ______ this programme. Let’s turn the TV off.
a about  b with  c at

46 Are people in this country very ______ from people in yours?
a different  b interested  c excited

47 We are very excited ______ our holiday.
a about  b from  c with

48 Who is Jennifer married ______ now?
a by  b with  c to

49 They aren’t very keen ______ basketball. They prefer tennis.
a of  b at  c on

50 Don’t ask them to do it. They’re really ______ at cleaning.
a annoyed  b worried  c bad
10 Progress test (Units 91 to 100)

1. Have you decided ______ your job?
   a) leave       b) to leave    c) leaving

2. We plan ______ at about six.
   a) arrive       b) to arrive   c) arriving

3. They didn't ______ to pay that much.
   a) agree       b) to agree    c) agreeing

4. Would you like ______ something this weekend?
   a) do          b) to do       c) doing

5. I really like ______ golf at the weekends.
   a) play        b) to play     c) playing

6. Why are you worried about ______ on a plane?
   a) go          b) to go       c) going

7. ______ at night can be dangerous.
   a) Drive       b) You drive   c) Driving

8. Matthew hopes ______ his studies at Oxford University.
   a) continue     b) to continue c) continuing

9. Tell ______ to borrow mine.
   a) she         b) her        c) to her

10. My uncle is really good at ______ sushi.
    a) make        b) to make    c) making

11. Is it true that ______ too much coffee is bad for you?
    a) drink       b) to drink    c) drinking

12. Do you mind ______ later?
    a) eat         b) to eat      c) eating

13. I often go ______ with friends.
    a) sunbathe    b) to sunbathe c) sunbathing

14. Rashish would like ______ too. Is there space in the car?
    a) come        b) to come     c) coming

15. What do you enjoy ______ in your free time?
    a) do          b) to do       c) doing

16. I plan ______ smoking on 1st January.
    a) give up     b) to give up  c) giving up

17. They want ______ at eight but I think that's too early.
    a) start       b) to start    c) starting

18. They've stopped ______ and have agreed to work together.
    a) argue       b) to argue    c) arguing

19. We were hungry so we stopped ______ something to eat.
    a) have        b) to have     c) having

20. They won't mind ______ late to finish this project.
    a) work        b) to work     c) working

21. We stopped ______ junk food months ago. Why don't you stop too?
    a) eat         b) to eat      c) eating

22. Don't stop ______ to me, please. I love ______ your letters.
    a) writing ... receiving b) to write ... to receive c) to write ... receiving

23. We've agreed ______ for lunch at one o'clock.
    a) stop        b) to stop     c) stopping

24. ______ her to send this, please.
    a) Tell         b) Say        c) Want

25. My manager ______ you to send this, please.
    a) says        b) wants       c) tells
26 We need _______ for the hotel.
   a pay       b to pay       c paying

27 I _______ to have the steak and chips, please.
   a like       b liking       c 'd like

28 What time do we need _______?
   a leave       b to leave     c leaving

29 I want _______ me when you get there.
   a you to call  b that you to call   c you call

30 We'd like _______ help today.
   a everyone     b everyone to     c to everyone

31 Lydia is visiting Nepal _______ Mount Everest.
   a the        b see            c to see

32 I'm calling you _______ arrange a meeting.
   a to           b so             c for

33 We need to stop at the supermarket _______ some vegetables.
   a buy           b buying         c to buy

34 The manager wants us to work late to _______ the shop.
   a clean       b cleaning        c for clean

35 Please _______ your hands before eating.
   a wash         b washes         c are washed

36 Your salary _______ into your bank account at the end of every month.
   a pay           b is paid        c are paid

37 The steak _______ with potatoes and salad.
   a serves       b is served      c is serving

38 All our coffee _______ in Ethiopia.
   a grow         b is grown       c to grow

39 The Japanese _______ really good-quality cars.
   a produce       b are produced   c is produced

40 How often _______?
   a are these rooms cleaned   b clean these rooms   c do these rooms cleaned

41 More people _______ Urdu than English.
   a speak           b is spoken     c are spoken

42 A new type of plant _______ in the Amazon jungle last week.
   a was discovered   b discovered    c is discovered

43 Chocolate _______ first brought to Europe hundreds of years ago.
   a is            b was            c were

   a wrote           b writes        c was written

45 The President was shot _______ a man on top of a building.
   a by             b with           c at

46 I _______ potatoes in my garden every year.
   a are grown     b was grown      c grow

47 Why _______ about this problem?
   a I wasn't told   b wasn't I told   c didn't I tell

48 I love this song. Who _______ it?
   a sings          b is sung        c was sing

49 All our pasta _______ by hand.
   a makes         b is made        c made

50 Why _______ that? It wasn't very nice.
   a did you say    b was it said    c said you
Appendix 1  Punctuation

Capital
Use a capital letter for …
• the first letter of a sentence.
• the names of people and places: Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Helen Keller, Jackie Chan, Madrid, New York, Hong Kong.
• the names of countries, nationalities and languages: China/Chinese, France/French, Australia/Australian, English.
• days of the week and months of the year (but not seasons): Monday, Thursday, April, September.
• school subjects: English, Maths, Biology.
• people’s titles: Mr Brown, Doctor Smith, President Obama.
• the pronoun I: Martha and I live in Simpson Street.

End of a sentence
Normally, we end a sentence with a full stop:
I live in London.

Question mark
• Put ? at the end of a question (not a full stop):
  Where do you live?

Commas
Use commas for …
• lists of nouns: I bought a pen, a book and a bag.
• lists of adjectives: It’s an old, black, electric lamp.
• conditional sentences when the if-clause comes first: If you leave now, you’ll catch the last train.

Apostrophe ’
Use an apostrophe for …
• contracted verbs forms. Here are some common examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb to be</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m = I am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he’s = he is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’re = they are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn’t = is not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t = are not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb to have</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ve = I have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she’s = she has</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’ve = we have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn’t = has not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven’t = have not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary verb to do</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>don’t = do not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t = does not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t = did not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>would like</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’d like = I would like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wouldn’t like = I would not like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative modals</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>won’t = will not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wouldn’t = would not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustn’t = must not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t = cannot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couldn’t = could not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouldn’t = should not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• for possessive ’s (see Unit 14):
  Karen’s mobile. My brother’s T shirt.
Appendix 2  Spelling rules

Plural nouns
• Add -s to most nouns.
  dog → dogs
  desk → desks
  house → houses

• Add -es to nouns ending in -ch, -o, -ss, -sh, and -x.
  sandwich → sandwiches
tomato → tomatoes
dish → dishes
bus → buses
box → boxes

• Change nouns ending in -y (after a consonant) to -i.
  country → countries
  story → stories
  city → cities

  Tip: Don’t change the -y to -i after a vowel: holidays, keys

• Some nouns are irregular. For example:
  man → men
  child → children
  woman → women
  person → people

Present simple third person (he/she/it) verbs
• Add -s to most verbs in the present simple third person form.
  live → lives
  start → starts
  work → works

• Add -es to verbs ending in -ch, -o, -ss, -sh and -x.
  watch → watches
  go → goes
  pass → passes

• Change verbs ending in -y (after a consonant) to -i.
  study → studies
  fly → flies

  Tip: Don’t change the -y to -i after a vowel: plays, buys

• A few verbs have irregular forms.
  have → has
  be → is

Comparative and superlative adjectives
• Add -er to short adjectives to form the comparative.
  Add -est to short adjectives to form the superlative.
  young → younger → youngest
  cheap → cheaper → cheapest

  Tip: When the adjective ends in -e, add -r/-st:
  large → larger/largest

• Change adjectives ending in -y (after a consonant) to -i.
  happy → happier → happiest
  angry → angrier → angriest

• Double the final consonant on some adjectives ending with a vowel and a consonant.
  hot → hotter → hottest
  big → bigger → biggest

  Tip: Don’t double the consonant with adjectives ending in -w or -y: slow → slower/slowest.

Adverbs ending in -ly
• You often add -ly to an adjective to form an adverb.
  quick → quickly
  slow → slowly

• Note these differences:
  Adjectives ending in -l: beautiful → beautifully
  Adjectives ending in -y: happy → happily
  Adjectives ending in -ble: horrible → horribly
Past simple regular verbs (-ed endings)

- Add -ed to verbs ending in a consonant.
  watch → watched
  visit → visited

- Add -d to verbs ending in -e.
  dance → danced
  arrive → arrived

- Double the final consonant on some verbs ending with a vowel and a consonant.
  stop → stopped
  jog → jogged

Present participles (-ing endings)

- With verbs ending in -e, delete the -e before adding -ing.
  dance → dancing
  live → living

- Double the final consonant on some verbs ending with a vowel and a consonant.
  stop → stopping
  run → running
  swim → swimming
  jog → jogging

British and American spelling

There are a few differences.

- Words ending in -re often end in -er: centre (Br Eng) – center (Am Eng).

- Words with -our often delete the -u: colour (Br Eng) – color (Am Eng), favourite (Br Eng) – favorite (Am Eng).

- Verbs ending with a vowel and a consonant don’t double the final consonant: travelling (Br Eng) – traveling (Am Eng).

- Verbs ending with -ise or -ize are always -ize: memorise (Br Eng) – memorize (Am Eng).

Check your spelling!

1 Write the plural of these words.
   1 cat
   2 address
   3 car
   4 potato
   5 apple
   6 dress
   7 baby
   8 person

2 Write the third person form of these verbs.
   1 go
   2 drive
   3 buy
   4 try
   5 push
   6 marry
   7 teach
   8 play

3 Correct the spelling mistake in each sentence.
   1 She steped at the traffic lights.
      stopped
   2 It’s hoter inside than out.
   3 I’m the happyest person in the world!
   4 Where are you moveing to?
   5 They love swiming.
   6 We danceed all night long.
   7 It’s the bigest tower in London.
   8 They’re planing their holidays.
## Appendix 3 Irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone/been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 4  Summary of main verb forms

Summary of present tenses

**Present simple**
I/You/We/They live in Ireland.
He/She/It lives in Ireland.

We don't live in Ireland.
She doesn't live in Ireland.

Where do they live?
Where does he live?

**Present continuous**
I'm playing basketball at the moment.
You/We/They're playing basketball at the moment.
He/She's playing basketball at the moment.

I'm not playing basketball at the moment.
He isn't playing basketball at the moment.
We aren't playing basketball at the moment.

What are you doing?
Where is she playing basketball?

**Present perfect**
I/You/We/They've gone to the cinema.
He/She's gone to the cinema.

We haven't gone to the cinema.
He hasn't gone to the cinema.

Where have they gone?
Where has she gone?

Summary of past tenses

**Past simple**
I/You/He/She/It/We/They finished last night.

I/You/He/She/It/We/They didn't finish last night.

Did I/You/He/She/It/We/They finish last night?

**Past continuous**
I/He/She/It was waiting for a bus.
You/We/They were waiting for a bus.

I wasn't waiting for a bus.
We weren't waiting for a bus.

Was he waiting for a bus?
Were you waiting for a bus?

Summary of future forms

I'll see you tonight.
I'm going to see her tonight.
We're seeing each other this evening.

Check your tenses!

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

1 She always __________________ (travel) by bicycle.
2 Where do you __________________ (work)?
3 Sorry, we __________________ (not open) the shop on Mondays.
4 Right now they __________________ (do) their homework.
5 My family __________________ (not eat) anything with meat in at the moment.
6 Who __________________ (sing) in the shower? It's really noisy!
7 Where __________________ (they live) nowadays?
8 Matilda __________________ (go) out but I can give her a message.
9 I __________________ (not be) to the cinema in ages!
10 We __________________ (finish) cleaning the car. What's next?
11 Mary and Dick __________________ (play) tennis yesterday.
12 They __________________ (win) the lottery last year.
13 When __________________ (you move) to Scotland? Was it a long time ago?
14 He __________________ (watch) TV when we arrived.
15 What __________________ (you do) when the teacher arrived?
**Summary of modal verbs**

Use *will* for …
- talking about the future (see Unit 71)
  *I’ll be in the café at six.*
  *She won’t be here tonight.*
- predictions (see Unit 71)
  *I think she’ll pass her exams.*
  *I’m sure they’ll get married.*
- offers, promises and requests (see Unit 72)
  *I’ll pick you up.*
  *I’ll be there in ten minutes.*
- instant decisions (see Unit 73)
  *I think I’ll have fish.*
  *Don’t worry. I’ll go and get her.*

Use *can* for …
- ability (see Unit 21)
  *I can speak French.*
  *I can’t play the piano.*
- offers and requests (see Unit 22)
  *Can I help you?*
  *Can I have a drink?*

Use *could* for …
- for past ability (see Unit 38)
  *Mozart could play the organ.*
  *How well could she see?*
- polite requests (see Unit 39)
  *Could I speak to Shelby, please?*
  *Could you spell that?*

Use *must* for obligation (see Unit 46 and 47)
*You must be home by ten-thirty.*
*You mustn’t be late.*

Use *should* for advice (see Unit 48)
*You should buy that dress.*
*He shouldn’t go with them.*

---

**Check your tenses!**

2 **Choose the correct modal verbs.**

1. I’m afraid I *won’t / mustn’t* be at the party tonight. I’m busy at work.
2. My best friend *can / could* play the piano really well. He’s a musician.
3. We’ll / ’d like a room on the south side of the hotel, please.
4. You *can / should* take the medicine twice a day. Don’t forget!
5. You *wouldn’t / mustn’t* take photographs at passport control. It’s against the rules.
6. *Can / Would* you like something to eat?
7. You *shouldn’t / couldn’t* stay up late. There’s school tomorrow.
8. How well *can / could* you play football when you were young?
**Unit 1**

1. c 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b
2. I’m from Brazil. I’m from the USA. I’m from Italy.
3. They’re from Spain. We’re married. He’s single.
4. You’re twenty-one.
5. Students’ own answers.

**Unit 2**

1. a 2 an 3 Ø 4 a 5 Ø 6 a 7 an 8 a 9 a 10 an 11 Ø 12 an
2. She isn’t a nurse. I’m not a teacher. You aren’t an artist.
3. They aren’t Russian. She isn’t Chinese. He isn’t married.
4. I’m not twenty-one. She isn’t a musician.
5. They aren’t from Peru. We aren’t students.
6. The Taj Mahal isn’t in Pakistan. It’s in India.

**Unit 3**

1. Are 2 Is 3 Are 4 Is 5 Is 6 Are 7 Is 8 Are 9 Are 10 Is
2. She isn’t a nurse. I’m not a teacher. You aren’t an artist.
3. They aren’t Russian. She isn’t Chinese. He isn’t married.
4. I’m not twenty-one. She isn’t a musician.
5. They aren’t from Peru. We aren’t students.
6. The Taj Mahal isn’t in Pakistan. It’s in India.
7. The Hypatia isn’t in Canada. It’s in the USA.
8. Machu Picchu isn’t in Mexico. It’s in Peru.
9. The Eiffel Tower isn’t in Italy. It’s in France.
10. The Sydney Opera House isn’t in the UK. It’s in Australia.
Unit 6

1 1 Where's the phone? 2 Where's the table? 3 Where are the keys? 4 Where's the camera? 5 Where are the pens? 6 Where's the wallet? 7 Where's the bag? 8 Where are the books?

2 1 on 2 ✓ 3 in 4 under 5 ✓ 6 on

3 1 It's under 2 They're in 3 It's under 4 It's next to 5 They're on 6 They're next to 7 It's next to 8 It's on 9 They're under 10 It's in

Unit 7

1 1 There's 2 There are 3 There's 4 There's 5 There's 6 There are

2 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 A

11 B 12 A 13 A 14 B

3 1 There are two windows in the room. 2 There's a big sofa in the middle of the room. 3 There are two chairs in front of the windows. 4 There's a desk in the corner of the room. 5 There's a computer on the desk. 6 There's a television in front of the sofa.

Unit 8

1 Conversation 1: 2, 4, 5, 3, 1, 6
Conversation 2: 2, 5, 4, 1, 6, 3

2 1 Yes, there is. It's on the first floor. 2 No, there isn't. 3 Yes, there is. It's on the second floor. 4 Yes, there is. It's on the third floor. 5 No, there isn't. 6 It's on the ground floor.

3 1 Is there a cinema near here? 2 Is there a cafe near here? 3 Is there a taxi rank near here? 4 Is there a swimming pool near here? 5 Is there a restaurant near here? 6 Is there a cash machine near here?

4 Students' own answers.
Unit 9
1. milk 2. coffee 3. eggs 4. apples 5. bread
6. banana 7. sugar 8. butter 9. biscuits
2. e 2. g 3. d 4. c 5. f 6. b 7. a
3. any 2. an 3. any 4. some 5. a 6. any 7. some
4. Is there any coffee? Yes, there is.
Are there any biscuits? No, there aren't.
Is there any sugar? No, there isn't.
Are there any eggs? Yes, there are.

Unit 10
1. There are 2. There's a 3. There are 4. There's a
5. There's a 6. There isn't a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>countable</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>drink</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apples</td>
<td>bananas</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td>eggs</td>
<td>milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncountable</td>
<td>butter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. a, c 2. a 3. b 4. a, c 5. a, c 6. a, b 7. a 8. a
9. b, c 10. c
4. are 2. any 3. aren't 4. some 5. on 6. in 7. 're
5. There isn't ... 2. Where are ...? 3. Are there ...?
4. There's ... 5. There aren't ... 6. Where's ...?
7. Is there ...? 8. There are ...

Unit 11
1. I've got 2. She's got 3. We haven't got 4. He's got
5. They've got 6. He hasn't got
2. Joe's got a nice house.
2. Annika and Ray haven't got a car.
3. Have you got a bike?
4. Has Catherine got a sister?
5. We haven't got any children.
6. I haven't got a cold. I've got the flu.
3. Have 2. got 3. they've got 4. I've got 5. Have 6. got
4. is 2. 's 3. 's got 4. 's got 5. 's 6. 's got
5. Johnny Depp is an actor.
2. He's 1m 79.
3. He's got brown hair and brown eyes.
4. He's got thirteen tattoos.
5. He's from the USA.
6. He's got a brother and two sisters.

Unit 12
1. I've got my keys.
2. You haven't got your laptop.
3. We've got our passports.
4. He hasn't got his glasses.
5. She's got her camera.
6. We haven't got our credit cards.
7. I've got my mobile.
8. They've got their tickets.
2 1 My camera's fantastic!
   2 Her new motorbike is great!
   3 His Dell laptop is brilliant!
   4 Our old car is terrible!
   5 Their old television is awful!

3 1 her  2 His  3 his  4 Her  5 her  6 His  7 Their
   8 their  9 Its

4 1 her  2 Our  3 She  4 I  5 your  6 His  7 its
   8 Their  9 my  10 We  11 His  12 My

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 13

1 1 Is this your watch?
   2 Are these your sunglasses?
   3 Is this your camera?
   4 Is that your bike?
   5 Are these your books?
   6 Is that your phone?

2 1 These trainers are old.
   2 This shirt is big.
   3 These trousers are small.
   4 These shoes are old.
   5 That coat is big.
   6 This hat is small.

3 1 A: That's my phone.  B: Which one?
   A: The black one.
   2 A: That's my bike.  B: Which one?
   A: The blue one.
   3 A: Those are my sunglasses.  B: Which ones?
   A: The yellow ones.

4 1 that  2 Which  3 one  4 one  5 That

Unit 14

1 1 A: Whose mobile is this?  B: I think it's Harry's.
   2 A: Whose books are these?  B: I think they're Lisa's.
   3 A: Whose sunglasses are these?  B: I think they're Harry's.
   4 A: Whose camera is this?  B: I think it's Tim's.
   5 A: Whose laptop is this?  B: I think it's Lisa's.
   6 A: Whose trainers are these?  B: I think they're Tim's.

2 1 It's his.  2 They're his.  3 They're hers.  4 It's hers.
   5 They're his.  6 It's his.

3 1 This is mine and that is yours.
   2 Those are theirs and these are ours.
   3 This is hers and that is yours.
   4 This is mine and that's his.

4 1 P, has  2 is, is  3 P, P  4 has, is  5 is, is  5 P, is

Unit 15

1 1 I've got blue eyes.
   2 She hasn't got a motorbike.
   3 Have you got a cold?
   4 Yes, I have.
   5 No, he hasn't.
   6 We've got two children.
   7 He's got a new laptop.
   8 Has she got dark hair?

2 1 Serena's  2 Sofia's  3 Bob's  4 Clinton's'
   5 George's  6 Jane's  7 Judy's  8 Elizabeth's

3 1 my  2 its  3 her  4 their  5 your  6 Its  7 Our  8 her

4 1 They're his.  2 It's hers.  3 It's mine.
   4 They're his.  5 It's theirs.  6 It's hers.
   7 They're yours.  8 They're ours.

5 1 Which one is Mike's?  The black one.
   2 Which ones are Ellen's?  The yellow ones.
   3 Which one is Lauren's?  The red one.
   4 Which ones are Paul's?  The blue ones.

6 1 /z/  2 /s/  3 /z/  4 /s/  5 /s/  6 /z/

7 boyfriend – girlfriend
   brother – sister
   father – mother
   husband – wife
   son – daughter

8 1 passport  2 credit card  3 sunglasses  4 laptop
   5 camera  6 watch

9 1 T  2 F  3 T  4 F  5 F  6 T  7 F  8 T

10 Harry: mobile, sunglasses
    Lisa: books, laptop
    Tim: camera, trainers
    (see next page for tapescript)
Tapescript (1.19)
1 A: Whose mobile is this? B: I think it’s Harry’s.
2 A: Whose books are these? B: I think they’re Lisa’s.
3 A: Whose sunglasses are these? B: I think they’re Harry’s.
4 A: Whose camera is this? B: I think it’s Tim’s.
5 A: Whose laptop is this? B: I think it’s Lisa’s.
6 A: Whose trainers are these? B: I think they’re Tim’s.

Unit 16
1 1 I’m from Spain but I live in London.
   2 Alberto’s from Spain and he lives in Madrid.
   3 Tessa’s from Greece and she lives in Athens.
   4 Jim and I are from the UK but we live in Tokyo.
   5 Yang and Li are from China but they live in Paris.
   6 Dan is from Australia and he lives in Melbourne.

2 1 He works in a hospital.
   2 She works in a bank.
   3 She works in a school.
   4 He works in a restaurant.
   5 They work in a hospital.
   6 We work in a restaurant.

3 1 works 2 work 3 start 4 starts 5 has 6 have
   7 finishes 8 finish 9 studies 10 watch

4 1 starts 2 starts 3 have 4 finishes 5 finishes

5 Larry starts work at half past four and Dan starts at five o’clock. They have a break at half past seven. Larry finishes work at half past eleven and Dan finishes at twelve o’clock / midnight.

6 Students’ own answers.

Unit 17
1 1 c 2 e 3 b 4 d 5 a

2 1 Fran 2 Nancy 3 Matt 4 Luke

3 1 A: Do you like pasta?
   B: No, I don’t.
   2 A: Does your boyfriend like Chinese food?
   B: No, he doesn’t but he likes Japanese food.
   3 A: Do your parents like sushi?
   B: My mother likes it but my father doesn’t.

4 1 her 2 me 3 her 4 them 5 us 6 him

5 1 I don’t like it.
   2 I like them.
   3 I don’t like her.
   4 I love it.
   5 I like him but I prefer her.

Unit 18
1 1 Lucy never goes to the opera.
   2 John goes to the opera every month.
   3 Lucy often goes to the cinema.
   4 Chris and Sally go to the cinema every Tuesday.
   5 John goes to the cinema twice a week.
   6 Chris and Sally sometimes go to the theatre.
   7 Lucy goes to the theatre once a year.
   8 John doesn’t often go to the theatre.

2 1 I play football twice a week.
   2 They always go to the cinema Saturdays.
   3 Jenny goes to the opera once a year.
   4 I play basketball three a month.
   5 Li often go to the cinema.
   6 Anita goes to the cinema weekend.
   7 I watch football once a.
   8 I go to the theatre a year

3 1 I never go to the opera.
   2 Steve plays football once a week.
   3 Donna always plays golf on Sundays.
   4 They sometimes go to the theatre.
   5 Carlo doesn’t often play tennis.
   6 I play basketball every Thursday.

4 1 ever 2 to 3 do 4 every 5 How 6 love 7 twice

5 Students’ own answers.

Unit 19
1 1 do 2 is 3 does 4 is 5 do 6 does 7 is 8 does
   9 is 10 does

2 1 Where 2 Where 3 How 4 When 5 Which
   6 What 7 How 8 Who 9 When 10 What

3 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 e 6 a 7 d

4 1 What time does she have breakfast?
   2 When does she study?
   3 What does she have for lunch?
   4 What does she do in the afternoon?
   5 Where does she have dinner?
   6 How long does she watch television in the evening?
Unit 20

1 She lives in Paris.
2 She works in a bank.
3 She starts work at eight o'clock.
4 She finishes work at six o'clock.
5 She has sushi for lunch.
6 She studies English.
7 She plays tennis.
8 She never watches television.
9 She goes to the opera once a month.
10 She hates rock music.
11 She sleeps six hours every night.
12 She often eats in restaurants.

2 Yes, I do. 2 No, he doesn't. 3 No, I don't.
4 Yes, he does. 5 Yes, I do. 6 Yes, I do.
7 Yes, he does. 8 No, I don't. 9 No, he doesn't.
10 Yes, he does.

3 Does 2 doesn't 3 don't 4 do 5 does 6 don't
7 Does 8 does 9 do 10 Do 11 do 12 doesn't

4 I like hip-hop but I prefer rock.
2 We always go to the cinema on Monday.
3 She doesn't often watch television.
4 I don't like jazz.
5 My sister works in a bank in Paris.
6 Jim starts work at half past nine.
7 I play tennis once a week.
8 Do you ever go to the theatre?

5 I, her, she, me 2 We, him, he, us 3 They, me, I, them

6 1 When 2 Where 3 What 4 Which 5 Who

7 1 /z/ 2 /iz/ 3 /z/ 4 /s/ 5 /iz/

8 play 2 go to 3 have 4 have 5 play 6 go to
7 have 8 go to 9 have

9 1 brother 2 girlfriend 3 parents 4 mother
5 children

10 1 banker 2/3 doctor, nurse 4/5 chef, waiter
6 teacher

11 1 What time does she have breakfast?
2 When does she study?
3 What does she have for lunch?
4 What does she do in the afternoon?
5 Where does she have dinner?
6 How long does she watch television in the evening?

Tapescript 0

1 A: What time does she have breakfast?
B: At eight o'clock.
2 A: When does she study? B: In the morning.
3 A: What does she have for lunch? B: A sandwich.
4 A: What does she do in the afternoon? B: She plays golf.
5 A: Where does she have dinner? B: In a restaurant.
6 A: How long does she watch television in the evening? B: For two hours.

Unit 21

1 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 e 5 d

2 1 can 2 Can 3 can't 4 can 5 Can 6 can't 7 Can
8 can 9 Can 10 can't 11 Can 12 can 13 Can
14 can't 15 can

3 1 Can 2 speak 3 can't 4 very well 5 can
6 well 7 can't

4 1 A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: No, I can't. I can speak Chinese.
2 A: Can they play the piano?
B: Yes, they can play very well.
3 A: Can she run fast?
B: Yes, she can.
4 A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can. I can also play golf.
5 A: Can he speak three languages?
B: No, but he can speak two languages.

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 22

1 1 Can 2 can 3 Can 4 I 5 Can 6 I 7 Can
8 can 9 Can 10 Can 11 I 12 Can

2 1 Can I borrow your car?
2 Can you speak to her?
3 Can I open the window?
4 Can I buy you lunch?
5 Can you get me a drink?
6 Can I carry your bag?
7 Can you help me?
8 Can you lend me your phone?
9 Can I use your laptop?
10 Can you answer the phone?
Answer key (and tapescript)

### Unit 23

2. Would you like the menu? I'd like some soup.
3. I'd like some coffee. Would you like some bread?
4. We'd like some water, please. I'd like the bill, please.

### Unit 24

1. Go. Turn. Stop. Don't turn left.
2. b. c. d. f. a. e.
3. c. d. g. e. j. b. h. i. a. 10. f.

### Unit 25

2. He can play the piano. I can't sing well.
3. Would you like the menu? No, thanks. I'd like some water.
4. Does he play tennis? / Can he play tennis?
5. Stop at the traffic lights!
6. She can run fast.
7. I'd like some water, please.

---

**Tapescript**

1. Sorry, I can't play tonight.
2. Can I have a table for two?
3. You can have ice cream.
4. We can't have a table near the window.
5. Yes, they can.

---

**Tapescript**

1. sing. 2. beautiful. 3. please. 4. map. 5. coffee. 6. right.
7. 1. speak. 2. play. 3. borrow. 4. Close. 5. get. 6. speak.

---

**Tapescript**

**Conversation 1**

Waiter: Good evening. My name's Mario and I'm your waiter.
Customer: Hello.
Waiter: Would you like the wine menu?
Customer: Yes, please. And we’d like some water, please.
Waiter: Certainly.

**Conversation 2**

Customer: Excuse me, we’d like to order now.
Waiter: Sure.
Customer: I’d like some soup and he’d like a green salad.
Waiter: Certainly. Would you like some wine?
Customer: No, thanks. But I’d like a cup of tea, please.
Unit 26
1  1 faster  2 older  3 cheaper  4 less expensive  5 hotter 
   6 better  7 happier  8 more beautiful  9 safer 
2  1 A motorbike is faster than a bicycle. 
   2 She is taller than him. 
   3 The red bike is less expensive than the blue bike. 
   4 Her book is more interesting than his book. 
3  1 Karen's younger than Tom. Tom's older than Karen. 
   2 The Mississippi River is shorter than the Amazon 
      River. The Amazon River is longer than the 
      Mississippi River. 
   3 My flat is smaller than your house. Your house is 
      bigger than my flat. 
   4 Today, it's hotter in Rome than in London. Today, 
      it's colder in London than in Rome. / Today, Rome 
      is hotter than London. Today, London is colder 
      than Rome. 

Unit 27
1  1 tallest  2 shortest  3 biggest  4 most dangerous 
   5 longest  6 oldest  7 safest  8 most expensive 
   9 highest  10 heaviest 
2  1 A snake is slower than a cheetah. 
   The tortoise is the slowest animal. 
   2 Italy is hotter than Norway. 
      Ethiopia is the hottest country. 
   3 The Indian Ocean is bigger than the 
      Mediterranean Sea. 
      The Pacific Ocean is the biggest ocean. 
   4 India is smaller than Russia. 
      Switzerland is the smallest country. 
   5 A car is faster than a bicycle. 
      The aeroplane is the fastest transport. 
3  1 I'm the worst at English in my class. 
   2 I think Brazil is the best football team in the world. 
   3 Snakes are the most dangerous animals in my 
      country. 
   4 I don't think he's a better actor than De Niro. 
   5 Your bags are heavy but my bag is the heaviest. 

Unit 28
1  1 beautifully  2 loudly  3 quietly  4 quickly  5 slowly 
   6 well  7 fast  8 happily  9 badly  10 late  11 hard 
   12 early 
2  1 badly  2 beautiful  3 loudly  4 quietly  5 quickly 
   6 slow  7 happy  8 loud  9 well  10 happily  11 quiet 
   12 slowly 
3  1 fast  2 beautifully  3 early  4 quietly  5 well 
   6 happily 
4  Students' own answers. 

Unit 29
1  1 later  2 earlier  3 better  4 faster  5 more slowly / 
      slower  6 harder  7 better  8 more quietly  9 louder 
2  1 You get up later than me. 
   2 I get up earlier than you. 
   3 Michael runs slower than Martin. 
   4 Martin runs faster / quicker / more quickly 
      than Michael. 
   5 Victoria plays the piano better than Julia. 
   6 Julia plays the piano worse than Victoria. 
3  a Can you speak more slowly? 
   b Can you speak more loudly? 
   c our meeting starts earlier 
   d He starts work later on Tuesdays. 
4  1 b  2 d  3 c  4 a 

Unit 30
1  1 faster  2 less expensive  3 best  4 harder  5 well 
   6 hot  7 quiet 
2  1 Can you play golf better than your dad? 
   2 The weather today is hotter than yesterday. 
   3 Blue whales are the biggest animals in the world. 
   4 He's the happiest student in my class. 
   5 I can run faster than you. 
   6 Is he worse at English than me? 
   7 A tortoise goes more slowly than a snake. 
   8 This ice cream is the best in the world. 
   9 This café is more expensive than that café. 
   10 This TV show is funnier than the other one. 
3  1 younger  2 heaviest  3 quietly  4 loudly  5 later 
   6 badly  7 early  8 quickly 
4  1 London is bigger than Edinburgh. 
   2 This film isn't longer than the other one. 
   3 They study very hard for exams.
Answer key (and tapescript)

5 1 Whales are bigger than elephants.
2 Mike's bigger than Martin.
3 English is easier than Maths.
4 Your car isn't faster than mine.
5 Tom is taller than his brother.
6 This is the most expensive car.

6 1 blue whale 2 supermarket 3 library 4 office
5 loudly 6 slowly 7 early

7 Across
3 good 6 short 7 interesting 9 slow 10 loud

Down
1 hot 2 young 4 dangerous 5 cheap 8 small

8 Across
3 bad – worse – worst, good – better – best
6 long – longer – longest, short – shorter – shortest
7 boring – more boring – most boring, interesting –
more interesting – most interesting
9 fast – faster – fastest, slow – slower – slowest
10 quiet – quieter – quietest, loud – louder – loudest

Down
1 cold – colder – coldest, hot – hotter – hottest
2 old – older – oldest, young – younger – youngest
4 safe – safer – safest, dangerous – more dangerous –
most dangerous
5 expensive – more expensive – most expensive,
cheap – cheaper – cheapest
8 big – bigger – biggest, small – smaller – smallest

9 1 Pierre 2 earlier 3 2

Unit 31

1 1 Sam isn’t cooking. He’s having a shower.
2 Catherine and Ali are watching television. They
aren’t reading.
3 Antonio and Julia aren’t cooking. They’re playing
chess.
4 Lucia’s reading a book. She isn’t playing chess.
5 Julia isn’t watching television. She’s sleeping.
6 Mike and Tom aren’t reading. They’re cooking.

2 1 No, she isn’t. 2 No, they aren’t. 3 Yes, she is.
4 Yes, they are. 5 No, they aren’t. 6 Yes, he is.

3 Lewis: 5, 3, 9, 1, 7
Marie: 6, 2, 4, 10, 8

Unit 32

1 1 works 2 isn’t working, ’s reading 3 cycles
4 isn’t cycling, ’s raining, ’s driving

2 1 live 2 drive, ’m taking 3 ’s raining 4 don’t smoke
5 Do you like, do 6 are you doing, ’m writing
7 ’s boiling 8 freezes 9 always go 10 rains
11 speak 12 ’m watching 13 have 14 ’s doing
15 ’s watching 16 Do you want

3 1 ’m having 2 ’m learning 3 starts 4 study 5 have
6 are 7 ’m having 8 ’m sitting 9 ’m eating
10 ’m doing 11 are 12 ’m making

Unit 33

1 Order: 5, 2, 3, 1, 4

2 1 I’m seeing Anne on Monday morning.
2 I’m going to the cinema on Tuesday evening.
3 Louise isn’t having lunch with Rita on Sunday.
4 Max is going to the beach on Friday morning.
5 Where are you having dinner on Wednesday
evening?
6 Who are they meeting on Monday morning?

3 1 g 2 f 3 d 4 i 5 j 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 e 10 h

4 1 are you doing on
2 are you having dinner with on
3 are you playing football
4 are you doing on Saturday
5 are you going on
6 are you going shopping
Unit 34

1 1 He’s going to travel around the USA.
2 She’s going to work in a laboratory.
3 They’re going to have a holiday in Spain.
4 She’s going to learn to drive.

2 1 Yes, he is. 2 Yes, they are. 3 No, he isn’t.
4 Yes, she is. 5 No, they aren’t.

3 1 Are we going to book
 2 is going to drive
 3 isn’t going to know
4 1 are you going to do
 2 are going to teach
 3 are you going to stay
 4 ’re going to work
 5 are you going to do
 6 ’m going to travel

5 1 What are you going to do in the summer?
 2 I’m not going to have a holiday.
 3 I’m going to work in a laboratory.
 4 What are you going to study?
 5 I’m going to study Physics.
 6 What are you going to do after university?

6 1 I’m going to buy a new jacket.
 2 We’re going to leave at three o’clock.
 3 Maggie is going to get a job in the college.
 4 They’re going to go home after school.
 5 Is he going to meet us there?
 6 When are you going to have lunch?
 7 I think it is going to snow tonight.
 8 Are Jemima and Hugo going to work in an office?

Unit 35

1 1 He’s playing tennis.
 2 They’re cooking.
 3 She’s reading a book.
 4 He’s sleeping.
 5 He’s watching television.
 6 They’re playing chess.

2 1 He isn’t playing tennis.
 2 They aren’t cooking.
 3 She isn’t reading a book.
 4 He isn’t sleeping.
 5 He isn’t watching television.
 6 They aren’t playing chess.

3 1 On Monday I’m playing tennis with Jules.
 2 On Tuesday I’m going to the cinema with Mazda.
 3 On Wednesday I’m going to the beach with my mum.
 4 On Thursday I’m going to the library with Sarah.
 5 On Friday I’m having dinner with Joe.
 6 On Saturday I’m shopping with Nicky.
 7 On Sunday I’m having lunch with my family.

4 1 are you doing on Monday
 2 are you playing tennis with
 3 are you doing on Wednesday
 4 are you going with Sarah / on Thursday
 5 are you seeing Joe
 6 are you shopping with on Saturday
 7 are you doing on Sunday

5 1 I’m going to read my emails.
 2 I’m going to phone my mum.
 3 He’s going to have a piano lesson.
 4 She’s going to study in the library.
 5 We’re going to play tennis.
 6 They’re going to go shopping.

6 1 13 24 35 45 56 66

Tapescript
1 I’m having dinner.
2 Are they watching television?
3 He’s going to buy it.
4 What are you doing later?
5 She isn’t going to be late.
6 Who are you seeing at eight?

7 1 play 2 play 3 have 4 have 5 play 6 have 7 play
 8 play 9 have

8 1 Are you free on Saturday evening?
 2 Is it any good?
 3 It’s excellent.
 4 Can I call you back?

9 1 c 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 d

10 1 are you doing on 2 ’m not doing 3 ’re going to the
 4 film are you 5 starts at eight

Tapescript
A: What are you doing on Friday?
B: I’m not doing anything. Why?
A: We’re going to the cinema. Would you like to come?
B: Yes, please. What film are you seeing?
A: On the Beach 2. It starts at eight o’clock.
Unit 36
1 1 was 2 was 3 were 4 was 5 was 6 were
2 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
3 1 was 2 were 3 was 4 was 5 wasn’t 6 were 7 were 8 were 9 weren’t 10 was 11 was 12 weren’t

Unit 37
1 1 There was 2 There were 3 There wasn’t 4 There wasn’t 5 there were 6 there weren’t
2 1 Yes, there was. 2 No, there wasn’t. There were cars. 3 No, there wasn’t. There was a cinema. 4 Yes, there were. 5 No, there weren’t. There was one restaurant. 6 No, there wasn’t. 7 No, there wasn’t. There was an Italian restaurant.
3 1 b 2 e 3 f 4 d 5 a 6 h 7 g 8 c

Unit 38
1 1 couldn’t 2 could 3 couldn’t 4 could 5 couldn’t 6 could 7 could 8 couldn’t 9 couldn’t 10 could

Unit 39
1 1 Could 2 Would 3 Could 4 Could 5 Could 6 Would 7 Could 8 Would 9 could 10 Would 11 Could 12 could 13 Could 14 Could 15 Would
2 1 Could I leave a message? 2 Would you like to buy something, madam? 3 Could you give me your number again, please? I can’t find it. 4 Harry is out. Would you like him to call you later? 5 I’d like some soup and she’d like a salad. And could we see the wine menu, please? 6 You can borrow the films but could I have them back by the weekend?

Unit 40
1 1 was 2 could 3 were 4 couldn’t 5 wasn’t 6 weren’t
2 Students’ own answers.
3 Order: 5, 3, 1, 6, 4, 7, 2
4 1 They weren’t at the party. 2 Sorry, I couldn’t come yesterday. 3 I was born in Brazil. 4 There were houses on the left. 5 Would you like to sit here? 6 Could I order some ice cream? 7 Were they born in Italy? 8 Could you tell him I called? 9 Could I borrow your car?
5 1 /waz/ 2 /waz/ 3 /waznt/ 4 /waz/ 5 /waz/

Tapescript 1.48
1 Yes, he was.
2 The weekend was great!
3 The film wasn’t very interesting.
4 I’m sure it was.
5 Was she at Oxford University?
6 1 bus station 2 supermarket 3 bank 4 train station 5 cinema 6 café 7 post office
7 1 boxer 2 car 3 singer 4 bridge 5 today
8 1 order 2 leave 3 have 4 spell 5 lend 6 speak 7 run 8 buy
9 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 F
Tapescript

Conversation 1
A: Hello Nancy. How was your weekend?
B: Great! Mike and I were in New York.
A: That's amazing!
B: It was my birthday.
A: Happy Birthday!

Conversation 2
A: Was James here this morning?
B: No, he wasn't.
A: Where was he?
B: I think he was in a meeting with Sue and Rona.
They were in Sue's office.
A: No, they weren't because I was with Sue in her office all morning!

Conversation 3
A: How was your sister's wedding?
B: Really good!
A: Was it big?
B: No, there weren't many people, just family and good friends.

Unit 41

1  1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T
2  1 studied 2 checked 3 visited 4 ✔ 5 ✔ 6 stopped
7 travelled 8 qualified
3  1 started 2 finished 3 graduated 4 visited 5 worked
6 travelled 7 walked 8 stopped 9 lived 10 studied
4  1 finished 2 started 3 graduated 4 travelled
5 studied 6 qualified 7 joined

Unit 42

1  1 eat - ate 2 sit - sat 3 do - did 4 swim - swam
5 get - got 6 go - went 7 have - had 8 make - made
9 buy - bought 10 take - took 11 give - gave
12 see - saw
2  1 ate 2 went 3 bought 4 had 5 did 6 swam
7 took 8 made 9 got 10 sat 11 gave 12 saw
3  1 got up 2 swam 3 ate 4 had 5 took 6 sat 7 went
8 did 9 bought
4  1 made 2 ✔ 3 ✔ 4 went 5 ✔ 6 bought 7 ✔
8 ate 9 sat 10 swam 11 had 12 ✔ 13 ✔ 14 joined
15 tried 16 ✔ 17 ✔ 18 gave

Unit 43

1  1 She left school in 1995.
2 She didn't go to university.
3 She started work in an office.
4 She got married in 1998.
5 She didn't have any children.
6 She got divorced.
7 She met a new partner.
8 She didn't get married again.

2  1 Did, didn't 2 Did, did 3 Did 4 Did, didn't

3  1 Did you get married?
2 Did you meet Bill at university?
3 Did you have any children?
4 Did you do your homework last night?
5 Did you take the bus to the airport?
6 Did you go to Spain on holiday?
7 Did you get up late this morning?

Unit 44

1  1 Where did you stay?
2 Who stayed there?
3 What did you do yesterday?
4 Who made your sandwich?
5 How many people went to the party?
6 What changed your plans?
7 What time did the TV programme start?

2  1 e 2 b 3 d 4 g 5 f 6 a 7 c

3  1 O 2 S 3 O 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 O

4  1 When did she leave home?
2 What did they study at university?
3 Who studied Biology at university?
4 When did you start your job?
5 What changed your plans?
6 Where did you meet Sheila?
7 Why did you leave your job?
8 Who lived in this house?
9 How long did you travel in Patagonia?

Unit 45

1  1 I ate breakfast at seven o'clock.
2 They went on Tuesday.
3 We didn't have time for lunch.
4 Who lived here?
5 Did you know her?
Answer key (and tapescript)

6 Why did you walk to work?
7 Sorry, I wasn’t at home.
8 How far did you swim?

2 1 Did you like Spain?
2 When did you live there?
3 Who wrote that book?
4 I studied in Bologna for a year.
5 We didn’t go to the cinema last night.
6 Why did you leave university early?
7 Did you visit the Eiffel Tower?
8 She made a delicious pasta dish.
9 When did you get divorced?

3 1 this morning 2 yesterday 3 last week
4 two weeks ago 5 last month 6 last year 7 in 1990

4 1 did 2 left 3 got 4 celebrated 5 went 6 took
7 made 8 graduated 9 stopped 10 travelled

5 1 went 2 left 3 celebrated 4 did 5 travelled
6 stopped 7 graduated 8 took 9 got 10 made

6 1 g 2 h 3 f 4 b 5 e 6 c 7 a 8 d

7 1 2 2 3 3 4 1 5 3 6 1 7 1 8 1 9 2 10 1
11 1 12 4

8 1 a 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 b 8 c

Tapescript 1.55
Matt: How was your holiday?
Anna: Great! We got up late every day and swam in the hotel pool before breakfast.

Matt: How was the food at the hotel?
Anna: Not bad, but we usually ate in one of the local restaurants. We had some delicious fish dishes.

Matt: So, were you near the coast?
Anna: Yes, we were. We took the hotel bus down to the sea and sat on the beach in the afternoon.

Matt: Were there many places to visit?
Anna: Mark went sightseeing but I wasn’t interested. I did some shopping on the last day. Look! I bought this beautiful bracelet at a local market.

Unit 46

1 1 parents 2 doctor/parents 3 boss 4 doctor
5 police officer 6 parents 7 parents 8 boss

2 1 You mustn’t use your mobile here.
2 You must eat more fruit.

3 You mustn’t drink the water here.
4 You must park on the left.
5 You must visit your grandparents.
6 You mustn’t take photographs here.
7 You mustn’t talk in class.
8 You must turn your mobile off.
9 You must phone me when you arrive.
10 You mustn’t phone after ten o’clock.

3 1 must 2 mustn’t 3 must 4 mustn’t 5 must
6 mustn’t 7 must 8 mustn’t 9 mustn’t 10 must
11 mustn’t 12 must 13 must

4 1 Rachel must leave at six.
2 You mustn’t do that.
3 We must drive on the left in the UK.
4 She mustn’t be late for her interview.
5 I must get up at six every day.
6 They must ask their parents.

Unit 47

1 1 must 2 don’t have to 3 must 4 have to 5 mustn’t
6 have to 7 don’t have to 8 have to

2 1 have to 2 mustn’t 3 Do 4 have to 5 do 6 do
7 have to 8 have to 9 have to 10 Does 11 have to
12 does 13 has to 14 mustn’t 15 has to

Conversation 1: waiter
Conversation 2: shop assistant

3 1 Paulo has to cook the food.
Macy doesn’t have to cook the food.
2 Paulo and Macy mustn’t smoke.
3 Paulo doesn’t have to clear the tables.
Macy has to clear the tables.
4 Paulo and Macy have to wear a uniform.
5 Paulo and Macy mustn’t be late.
6 Paulo doesn’t have to serve the customers.
Macy has to serve the customers.

Unit 48

1 1 That’s not true. You shouldn’t smoke.
2 That’s true.
3 That’s true.
4 That’s not true. You shouldn’t drink a lot of coffee.
5 That’s not true. You shouldn’t work twelve hours a day.
6 That’s not true. You should go on holiday.
2 1 You should buy it.  
2 You shouldn’t buy them.  
3 You should buy them.  
4 You shouldn’t buy it.  
5 You should buy it.  
6 You shouldn’t buy them.  
3 1 should  
2 should  
3 shouldn’t  
4 should  
5 should  
6 should  
4 1 I think you should buy those shoes.  
2 They shouldn’t pay that much money.  
3 Rita should ask me first.  
4 Should we leave now or later?  
5 Gerald should do more exercise.  
6 What should he do about the problem?

Unit 49

1 1 They had to study Maths.  
2 Lisa didn’t have to study French.  
3 Tony had to study French.  
4 They didn’t have to study Geography.  
5 They had to study Science.  
2 1 e 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 f  
3 1 Did  
2 have to  
3 did  
4 had to  
5 had to  
6 Did  
7 have to  
8 didn’t  
9 had to  
10 Did  
11 have to  
12 did  
13 had to  
14 had to  
4 1 Did he have to do that?  
2 Did Mike and Lelia have to stay late?  
3 What time did you have to get up?  
4 Did you have to clean the house today?  
5 Why did we have to pay for the ticket?  
6 Did she have to study French at school?

Unit 50

1 1 You mustn’t smoke.  
2 You mustn’t eat or drink.  
3 You mustn’t take photographs.  
4 You mustn’t walk.  
5 You mustn’t park.  
6 You mustn’t use your mobile.  
2 1 I have to start work at eight o’clock.  
2 I mustn’t park in the boss’s parking space.  
3 I mustn’t be late.  
4 I must learn the rules.  
5 I don’t have to wear a uniform.  
6 I must wear a jacket and tie.  
3 1 I shouldn’t drink coffee.  
2 I should drink water.  
3 I shouldn’t eat doughnuts.  
4 I should do exercise.  
5 I should eat vegetables.  
6 I shouldn’t drink wine.  
4 1 had to  
2 had to  
3 Did  
4 have to  
5 didn’t  
6 had to  
7 had to  
8 didn’t  
9 have to  
5 1 mustn’t  
2 should  
3 don’t  
4 could  
5 shouldn’t  
6 mustn’t  
6 1 awful  
2 boss  
3 homework  
4 great  
5 job  
7

Order: 5, 3, 4, 1, 7, 2, 6  

8 Order: 5, 3, 4, 1, 7, 2, 6  

Tapescript 2.1.61

Joe: You work too hard. You should work less.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: You should go on holiday.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: And you shouldn’t drink all that coffee.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: And you smoke? You should stop now.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: And you look terrible! You should take more exercise.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: And doughnuts! You should eat healthier food.  
Mark: Yes, but …  
Joe: Yes, but what?  
Mark: Oh, nothing.
Unit 51

1 1 Mark’s combed his hair.
   2 Rick hasn’t combed his hair.
   3 Mark’s ironed his shirt.
   4 Rick hasn’t ironed his shirt.
   5 Mark’s cleaned his shoes.
   6 Rick hasn’t cleaned his shoes.

2 1 've cleaned 5 haven’t done
   2 's left 6 's tidied
   3 haven't finished 7 've bought
   4 've had 8 's made

3 1 I’ve lost my credit card.
   2 Julia’s borrowed my dictionary.
   3 Christina’s bought a new top.
   4 The car has stopped.
   5 I’ve broken my phone.

4 1 Have you cleaned
   2 Have you had
   3 Have you combed
   4 Have you cleaned

Unit 52

1 1 They’ve just moved house.
   2 She’s just had a baby.
   3 They’ve just got married.
   4 He’s just graduated from university.

2 1 Have you done the washing up yet?
   2 Has he made his bed yet?
   3 Have they cleaned the bathroom yet?
   4 Has she tidied the living room yet?
   5 Have you made dinner yet?
   6 Has he done the shopping yet?

3 1 yet 2 yet 3 already 4 already 5 yet 6 already

4 1 ✓ 2 at two o’clock 3 this afternoon 4 ✓ 5 ✓

5 I haven’t phoned Angelina yet. I’m going to do that at four o’clock. I’ve already phoned Tom and I’ve already talked to Kevin. I haven’t emailed Sharon yet. I’m going to do that this afternoon. I haven’t talked to Martin yet. I’m going to do that after lunch.

Unit 53

1 1 since 2 since 3 for 4 since 5 since 6 since
   7 for 8 for

2 1 28 2 seven years 3 six years 4 25 5 three years
   6 18

3 1 have you lived 8 've had
   2 've been 9 since
   3 for 10 've been
   4 have you had 11 for
   5 Since 12 've known
   6 've been 13 since
   7 since

4 Students’ own answers.

Unit 54

1 1 Have you ever been to Australia?
   2 Have you ever ridden a motorbike?
   3 Have you ever drunk Red Bull?
   4 Have you ever played basketball?
   5 Have you ever eaten Greek yoghurt?
   6 Have you ever seen a James Bond film?

2 1 d 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 f 6 e

3 1 I’ve been to Canada but I’ve never been to the USA.
   2 I’ve drunk Coca-Cola but I’ve never drunk Pepsi-Cola.
   3 I’ve played table tennis but I’ve never played tennis.
   4 I’ve ridden a bicycle but I’ve never ridden a motorbike.
   5 I’ve spoken/studied French but I’ve never spoken/studied Spanish.
   6 I’ve played the piano but I’ve never played the guitar.
   7 I’ve eaten sushi but I’ve never eaten curry.
   8 I’ve seen a dolphin but I’ve never seen a blue whale.

4 1 A: Have you ever been to Canada?
   B: Yes, I have. I went to Montreal last year.
   2 A: Have you ever played rugby?
   B: Yes, I have, I played rugby when I was at school.
   3 A: Have you ever eaten curry?
   B: Yes, I have. I ate curry in London last summer.
   4 A: Have you ever seen Romeo and Juliet?
   B: Yes, I have. I saw Romeo and Juliet at the Globe Theatre in May.

Unit 55

1 1 haven’t 2 's 3 hasn’t 4 hasn’t 5 haven’t 6 've
   7 's 8 've

2 1 already 2 yet 3 already 4 yet 5 just
3 1 He's been a dentist for fifteen years.
2 He's lived in Edinburgh for five years.
3 He's supported Arsenal FC since he was five.
4 He's had a BMW since he was eighteen.
5 He's known his wife/Meg for eight years.
6 They've been married since January.
7 Rosey's had her own business since 2005.

4 1 Have you ever been to Canada?
2 Have you ever drunk Greek wine?
3 Have you ever played golf?
4 Have you ever read Hamlet?
5 Have you ever eaten caviar?

5 e 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d

6 1 've 2 have 3 have 4 haven't 5 have not 6 's
7 has 8 hasn't

**Tapescript 32.06**
1 We've read your book.
2 Yes, they have.
3 Have you ever been to Spain?
4 No, I haven't.
5 No, I have not had lunch.
6 He's lived here for three years.
7 She has been there.
8 It hasn't finished yet.

**Unit 57**

1 1 rang 2 was watching 3 were barking 4 found
5 saw 6 was having 7 stopped 8 arrived

2 1 were, doing 2 was driving 3 stopped
4 were waiting 5 was raining 6 was barking
7 opened 8 Did, enter 9 was walking 10 saws
11 did, do

3 1 I met an old friend while I was waiting at the bus station.
2 They weren't working when we arrived.
3 When she called, I was having a bath.
4 Everyone was looking at the sky. Suddenly, they saw the aliens!
5 While we were eating breakfast, my taxi arrived.
6 I was reading my book when the lights went out.
7 While we were watching TV, Molly told us her news.
8 My parents were living in Italy when I was born.

**Unit 58**

1 1 After 2 because 3 and 4 or 5 Before 6 When
7 so 8 While 9 but

2 1 and 2 while 3 after 4 but 5 so 6 or 7 because
8 when

3 1 We went to London and Paris.
2 We didn't have time to visit the palace or the park.
3 We booked tickets before we went to the theatre.
4 We had dinner after we went to the theatre.
5 She liked the theatre but she didn't enjoy the opera.
6 While I was waiting for a taxi, my friend arrived with his car.
7 When the art gallery closed, I went for a drink.
8 We didn't go to the palace because we were hungry.
9 The museum was closed so he went shopping.

**Unit 56**

1 1 The snow was falling and the children were playing in it.
2 The telephone was ringing but Mike was working in the garden.

3 The students weren't doing their work when the teacher came in.
4 The baby was crying because a dog was barking.
5 It wasn't raining so we ate outside.
6 I wasn't planning to go out but my friend was bored.
Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 59

1 1 I used to work in a shop.
   2 correct
   3 correct
   4 Television didn’t use to be in colour.
   5 I used to love chocolate!
   6 Did you use to live here?

2 1 use 2 used 3 use 4 used 5 use 6 use 7 used

3 1 She didn’t use to wear a lot of make up.
   2 He used to wear this suit.
   3 He used to act in the theatre.
   4 They didn’t use to argue (a lot).

4 Students’ own answers.

Unit 60

1 1 was running 2 were, talking 3 wasn’t working
   4 were having 5 Was, studying 6 wasn’t looking
2 1 was sleeping 2 woke up 3 looked 4 was barking
   5 was cycling 6 droved 7 weren’t looking
   8 said

3 1 after 2 and 3 because 4 Before 5 but 6 or 7 so
   8 when 9 while

4 1 I used to live in Beijing when I was a child.
   2 What did you use to do when you worked there?
   3 He didn’t use to like carrots before he left home.
   4 They used to have long hair in 1975.
   5 She didn’t use to drive before last year.
   6 As a student, when did you use to go to bed?

5 1/z/ 2/s/ 3/s/ 4/z/ 5/s/ 6/z/

6 1 bedroom 2 dining room 3 kitchen 4 library
   5 living room 6 study

7 1 palace 2 gallery 3 park 4 monument 5 beach

8 1 when I was sixteen 2 while I was taking
   3 after Australia 4 but I only travelled
   5 so I didn’t have time 6 Australia or New Zealand
   7 because we had problems 8 When we were leaving

Unit 61

1 1 None 2 Some 3 most 4 Most 5 Some 6 None
   7 None 8 All

2 1 Ø 2 of 3 Ø 4 of 5 Ø 6 of 7 of 8 of

3 Order: 5, 3, 6, 2, 4, 1

Unit 62

1 1 Everybody, nothing 2 nobody, Everybody
   3 anything, anybody 4 somebody, anybody
   5 nobody, everything

2 1 anybody, anywhere 2 something, somebody
   3 anything, nothing 4 everywhere, anywhere
   5 somewhere, nowhere

3 1 There isn’t anybody in the house.
   2 There’s nothing to do.
   3 There isn’t anywhere to go.
   4 There isn’t anything on TV.
   5 There’s no one I want to phone.
   6 There’s nowhere worse than here.

4 1 something 2 everything 3 anything 4 nothing
   5 anything 6 someone/somebody
   7 no one / nobody 8 everywhere 9 anything
   10 anywhere

Unit 63

1 1 Both 2 Both 3 Neither 4 Both 5 Neither
   6 Both 7 Both 8 Neither 9 Neither 10 Both
   11 Both 12 Neither

2 1 I don’t like either type of music.
   I like neither type of music.
   2 I haven’t been to either country.
   I’ve been to neither country.
   3 I can’t speak either language.
   I can speak neither language.
   4 I don’t play either sport.
   I play neither sport.

3 1 both 2 Neither 3 either 4 Both 5 Either
   6 Neither

Unit 64

1 1 U 2 U 3 C 4 C 5 U 6 U 7 U 8 U 9 U 10 U
   11 U 12 C 13 C 14 C 15 C 16 U
**Unit 65**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>All</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Some</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Most</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>None</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>All</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>Most</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Most</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Some</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Everybody</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>anybody</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Nobody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Everybody</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Nobody</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>anybody</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>anywhere</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>everywhere</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>nowhere</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>anywhere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>nothing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Everything</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5</th>
<th>Both</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Neither</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Neither</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>either</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>both</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>either</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>neither</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Either</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6</th>
<th>much, is</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>much, is</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>many, are</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>many, are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>much, is</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>much, is</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>many, are</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>many, are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8</th>
<th>speaking</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>listening</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>vocabulary</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>grammar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>literature</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9</th>
<th>About an hour.</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>About twenty.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Not much.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>No, there wasn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>No, there weren’t.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>About five hundred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>About a thousand.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>About two hundred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit 66**

| 1 | an | 2 | 0 | 3 | a | 4 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 6 | an | 7 | an | 8 | 0 | 9 | a |
| 10 | 0 | 11 | an | 12 | a |

| 2 | 1 | a | 2 | a | 3 | an | 4 | an | 5 | a | 6 | a | 7 | a | 8 | a | 9 | an | 10 | a |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>He lives in a small apartment.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Maria was a Maths teacher for three years.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>They’ve got tickets for the match.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>My uncle is an engineer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>That’s a beautiful bracelet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Would you like a table for two?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Robert De Niro is an American actor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Have you seen an umbrella anywhere?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>I’m going to be a chef when I’m older.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Is there a bank near here?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Why do we love celebrities? Perhaps it's because our favourite star is a singer or an actor. But what about celebrities who are famous because they are 'famous'? For example, Paris Hilton grew up in a rich family. Then, as an adult, she was always in a magazine. She spent all her time at parties with other famous people. She has had many different jobs. She was a model for a while. She made an album, worked as an actress in some TV commercials and films and has also written a book. But her most successful job is as a celebrity - whatever that is!

Unit 67

1 1 This is Anouk. She's from the Netherlands.
2 Sri Lanka is in the Indian Ocean.
3 Cheetahs are the fastest animals on land.
4 Harald V is the King of Norway.
5 The Earth is 384,000 km from the moon.
6 My mother cooks the best cakes in the world!
7 Can you play the piano?
8 Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower.
9 That was the worst film I've ever seen!
10 The Black Sea used to be part of the Atlantic Ocean.
11 There are twenty-seven countries in the European Union.
12 I love to listen to the violin.

2 1 Tortoises live the longest.
2 Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space.
3 The Atomium monument is in Brussels.
4 The North Pole is in the Arctic.
5 The Suez canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
6 Ferdinand Magellan went round the world in 1519.

Unit 68

1 1 a 2 the 3 a 4 the 5 the 6 an 7 the 8 the 9 the 10 a
2 1 c 2 h 3 j 4 i 5 b 6 e 7 a 8 f 9 d 10 g
3 1 a 2 the 3 a 4 the 5 a 6 an 7 the 8 the 9 the 10 a 11 an 12 the 13 the 14 a 15 a 16 the 17 The 18 a 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the
4 Students' own answers.

Unit 69

1 1 Italian food 2 The people 3 the sandwiches 4 the girl 5 rock music 6 time 7 elephants 8 Life 9 foot 10 Chinese
2 1 correct 2 Have you ever been to the Disneyland? 3 I go to the school at eight o'clock. 4 My father works at the home. 5 She goes to work by the bicycle. 6 I would love to see the Mount Everest. 7 I hate the golf. I never play it. 8 We study the Urdu at school. It's a great language. 9 The Spanish people are very friendly. 10 correct 11 My grandmother lives in the Berlin. 12 I eat a lot of the apples.
3 1 c 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c
4 1 Ø 2 a 3 Ø 4 The 5 Ø 6 Ø 7 Ø 8 a 9 an 10 the 11 Ø 12 Ø 13 the

Unit 70

1 1 The 2 Ø 3 a 4 the 5 Ø 6 the 7 a 8 the 9 the 10 a 11 the 12 Ø 13 Ø 14 the
2 1 the largest 2 the United States 3 a football 4 a small town 5 the oldest 6 a Spanish 7 a coffee 8 a headache 9 the most popular actress 10 The History 11 a flat 12 is in the 13 a dish 14 a song
3 1 /Øiː/ 2 /ðə/ 3 /ˈdæə/ 4 /ˈðiːtɪə/ 5 /ðə/ 6 /ˈdiːtɪə/ 7 /ðə/ 8 /ðə/ 9 /ˈdiːtɪə/ 10 /ðə/
4 Across 1 destination 5 by 6 arrive 7 taxi 8 tour
Down 2 subway 3 tourist 4 on
5 1 composer 2 pop star 3 chef 4 celebrity 5 engineer 6 teacher
6 1 the Indian Ocean 2 the United Kingdom 3 the European Union 4 the North Pole 5 the White House 6 the Statue of Liberty
7 1 tortoises 2 Yuri Gagarin 3 Brussels 4 the Arctic 5 the Suez Canal 6 Ferdinand Magellan
Tapescript 3.25
1 Tortoises live the longest.
2 Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space.
3 The Atomium monument is in Brussels.
4 The North Pole is in the Arctic.
5 The Suez canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
6 Ferdinand Magellan went round the world in 1519.

Unit 71
1 1 Tomorrow will be a beautiful day.
2 One day I'll be famous.
3 We'll be in Rome tomorrow so meet us there.
4 Will your new girlfriend be at the party?
5 I think John will pass all his exams.
6 When will you be eighteen?
7 Who will win: Real Madrid or AC Milan?
8 Don't worry: I'm sure you'll get better.
9 Next week it'll be the summer holidays!
10 Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
11 Nobody will be in the office tomorrow so don't call.
12 Will we ever find a cure for cancer?

Unit 73
1 1 I think I'll have the tomato soup.
2 I think I'll have a pizza.
3 I think I'll have a chicken sandwich.
4 I think I'll have the steak with salad.
2 1 I think I'll have some pasta.
2 I think I'll turn on the heating.
3 I think I'll have a glass of water.
4 I think I'll go to bed.
5 I think I'll turn on the air conditioning.
6 I think I'll go for a walk.
7 I think I'll go home.

Unit 74
1 1 e 2a 3 b 4 d 5 c
2 1 Rita and I are playing tennis on Tuesday.
2 It's OK. I'll pay for lunch.
3 This year I'm going to learn to play the piano.
3 1 I'm having 2 will get 3 Will it snow
4 are you getting 5 are you going 6 Will I like
4 1 are having 2 I'm going to 3's going to see
4 both 5 are you going to tell 6 both
Answer key (and tapescript)

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 75

1 1 're 2 aren't 3 are 4 'll 5 will 6 's 7 's 8 Will 9 won't

2 1 What do are you doing tonight? 2 I'm to celebrating at the Irish Pub. 3 Please will come. 4 I'll be being there at eight o'clock. 5 Also my dad is are going to pay for a holiday 6 I think I'll going travel to somewhere like Spain or Greece. 7 Anyway, I'll am see you tonight I hope.

3 1 Will you be 2 won't 3 '1 1 1 4 are you doing 5 're going 6 see 7 'm going 8 going to snow

4 Students' own answers.

5 1a 2b 3a 4b 5a 6b 7b 8a

Tapescript 2.31

1 The plane leaves at five.
2 Pills'll replace food.
3 I have tea in the morning.
4 We'll pick you up from the airport.
5 Prices go up before Christmas.
6 They'll learn the piano.
7 Don't worry. I'll open it.
8 We always have lunch together.

6 1 thirsty 2 difficult 3 cold 4 hungry 5 tired 6 hot 7 bored

7 1 pizza 2 chicken 3 salad 4 steak 5 fish 6 pasta 7 tomato 8 soup

8 Order: 9, 1, 4, 8, 6, 3, 7, 5, 2, 10

Tapescript 2.32

A: Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?
C: Yes, of course.
A: When will you be in Amsterdam?
C: I'll be in Amsterdam on 1 August.
A: Will you be alone?
C: No, I won't. I'll be with Henri.
A: Which hotel will you be in?
C: I'll be in the Four Seasons.
A: Be careful.
C: Don't worry. I'll be very, very careful.

Unit 76

1 in: 1999, the evenings, August, summer, the middle of winter, the 1990s, the early morning
on: New year's Day, 29th February, the third Friday of the month, Sundays, weekdays
at: half past ten, midday, night, 5 p.m., the same time, the weekend

2 1 on 29th February 2 in the middle of winter 3 at half past ten 4 in the early morning 5 on Sundays 6 on the third Friday of the month 7 at the same time 8 in the 1990s

3 1 b 2 d 3 f 4 e 5 c 6 a

4 1 on 2 In 3 At 4 In 5 at 6 On 7 at 8 at 9 at 10 at 11 In

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 77

1 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 h 5 d 6 e 7 f 8 g

2 1 at 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 in

3 1 in the middle 2 on the left 3 next to 4 on the right 5 Behind 6 in front of 7 Under 8 in the corner

Unit 78

1 1 d 2 g 3 a 4 h 5 f 6 c 7 b 8 e

2 1 which 2 who 3 who 4 which 5 who 6 which 7 which 8 who

3 1 which 2 which 3 which 4 who 5 who 6 who 7 which 8 which 9 who 10 which

4 1 correct 2 I don't like food which/that has a lot of salt in it. 3 A biologist is a person who works in a laboratory. 4 He bought a new bike which/that cost him over two thousand euros.

5 correct
6 I've always liked people who laugh really loudly.
7 We stayed in a hotel which/that was over 200 years old.
8 correct
9 This is a machine which/that translates words into English.
Unit 79

1 1 which 2 who 3 who 4 which 5 which

2 1 This is my new car which my parents gave me.
2 This is my friend who helped me with my exam.
3 This is the book which I was reading last week.
4 This is the film which I went to see last night.
5 These are the CDs which I bought online.
6 This is the song which they sang at our wedding.

3 1 Would you like to see the photos that I took on my holiday?
2 And this is the couple that we met on the plane. They were great fun.
3 This is one of the hotels that we stayed at. It was really nice.
4 And this is the swimming pool that they had on the roof.

Sentences 2, 4 and 7 cannot omit the relative pronoun.

Unit 80

1 1 on 2 at 3 at 4 in 5 in

2 1 on 2 to 3 on 4 in 5 in 6 behind 7 in 8 between 9 at 10 At 11 in 12 of

3 1 a person who follows a particular team or sport 2 correct
3 a person who works in a school 4 a thing which you use to light a fire 5 correct
6 a person who looks after plants 7 correct
8 correct 9 a machine which prints things from your computer

Sentences 4 and 7 can omit the relative pronoun.

4 1 I loved the film we saw last night.
2 My favourite actor was the woman who stole the car.
3 These are the photos I took at the party.
4 This is the photo which won an award.
5 Do you like the CD my brother gave to me?
6 I like the singer who sings in Spanish.

5 1 correct 2 She’s the woman who sings that song.
3 correct 4 correct

Unit 81

1 1 When you heat ice, it melts.
2 If you go into space, you float.
3 When you press this button, the computer starts.
4 If you have a headache, an aspirin helps.
5 When you sneeze, you always close your eyes.
6 If you add two and two, you get four.

2 1 e 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b
Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 83

1. 1. leave, 'll call 2. don't give, 'll tell 3. 'll pay, help 4. phones, 'll say 5. won't pass, don't work 6. go, 'll catch 7. arrive, 'll ask 8. Will they visit, have 9. will Jane do, doesn't hear

2. 1. If you work hard at school, you'll go to university. 2. You'll catch the bus if you run. 3. If you don't get a job, you won't have any money. 4. The police will stop you if you drive too fast. 5. If you don't tell me the answer, I won't be your best friend. 6. If you give me your email address, I'll send you the attachment.

3. 1. If you turn left, you'll see the house on the left. 2. But it's a one-way street. If I turn left, the police will stop me. 3. If my plane lands at three, will you pick me up? 4. Sure, but if it's delayed, will you call? 5. I'll send you to your bed if you hit your brother again! 6. I'll stop if he stops hitting me! 7. If you ignore him, he'll leave you alone. 8. If I tell you a secret, will you keep it? 9. Sure. It'll be between you and me.

4. 1. when 2. If 3. If 4. when 5. If 6. when 7. if 8. If 9. when 10. If

Unit 84

1. 1. check out before 10 a.m. 2. use / pay with Visa or Mastercard 3. enter 4. use the stairs 5. press 0

2. 1. have to 2. must 3. might 4. can 5. don't have to 6. might 7. Should 8. have to 9. 'll

3. 1. If you're late, you should call me. 2. He can come later if you want. 3. If you have to stay another day, that's fine. 4. She can learn French if she uses this computer program. 5. We'll take a break now if you like. 6. The taxi can pick you up if you want. 7. We must meet up for dinner when you come to England. 8. You can stay with Lars if you visit Stockholm.

4. 1. c 2. f 3. b 4. e 5. d 6. a

5. Students' own answers.

Unit 85

1. 1. go 2. dream 3. rains 4. 'll call 5. 'll stay 6. Don't 7. will give 8. do 9. is 10. don't 11. do 12. will

2. 1. g 2. h 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. e 7. f 8. b

3. 1. If 2. When 3. unless 4. When 5. when 6. if 7. unless 8. if

4. 1. starts 2. tell 3. comes 4. don't tidy 5. 'll have 6. won't be 7. 'll pick 8. wants

6. 1. around 2. off 3. back 4. up 5. back 6. up

7. 1. can't answer 2. it's 3. it isn't 4. leave 5. I'll call 6. call 7. if you like 8. could email

Tapescript 2.44

Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I can't answer the phone at the moment. If it's between nine and five, I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If it isn't urgent, leave your name and number and I'll call you back. Or call me on my mobile if you like. That's 0770 879 3345. Or you could email me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!
Unit 86

1 1 interested 2 exciting 3 surprised 4 boring 5 tired 6 annoying
2 1 interested 2 tired 3 excited 4 frightened 5 embarrassed 6 surprised 7 bored 8 worried 9 annoyed 10 relaxed
3 1 worrying 2 boring 3 exciting 4 annoying 5 frightening 6 tiring 7 surprising 8 interesting 9 relaxing 10 embarrassing
4 Students’ own answers.

Unit 87

1 1 feel smoother 2 Look younger 3 smell fresh 4 Sound fluent 5 taste delicious
2 1 cool 2 rough 3 awful 4 delicious (or lovely) 5 lovely 6 sad 7 polluted 8 relaxing 9 sweet 10 old
3 1 feel 2 look 3 sounds 4 smells 5 taste 6 looks 7 smells 8 tastes 9 sounds 10 feel

Unit 88

1 1 large, white, metal 2 practical, square, plastic 3 two, comfortable, red 4 ancient, tall, Japanese 5 stylish, brown, wooden
2 1 a new cotton 2 a very fast Korean 3 a lovely Russian 4 old black 5 an eighteenth-century French 6 long, yellow, cotton
3 Suggested answers:
   1 elegant Australian 2 enormous eighteenth-century 3 beautiful diamond
4 Students’ own answers.

Unit 89

1 1 at 2 on 3 of 4 with 5 at 6 with 7 about 8 of
2 1 with 2 by 3 of 4 about 5 with 6 at 7 of 8 from 9 to 10 in 11 at 12 about
3 1 excited about 2 worried about 3 married to 4 different from 5 good at 6 interested in

Unit 90

1 1 bored 2 great 3 annoying 4 tiring 5 frightening 6 worried 7 exciting 8 beautiful 9 married 10 fluent 11 polluted 12 awful 13 interesting 14 delicious 15 surprised
2 1 sounds 2 looks 3 smells 4 feel
3 1 correct 2 I have a new white fringe for sale. 3 They’re keen on golf.
4 correct 5 Emily is really excited about her birthday.
6 Who does that frightening big brown dog belong to? 7 I’m really bad at Maths. Can you help me?
8 correct 9 He looks intelligent.
10 correct 11 correct 12 I was surprised by his new haircut.
13 This is a really annoying romantic film.
14 correct 15 Why are you worried about your results?
4 1 interesting 3 2 interested 3 3 boring 2 4 bored 1 5 exciting 3 6 excited 3 7 worrying 3 8 worried 2 9 tiring 2 10 tired 1 11 annoying 3 12 annoyed 2 13 frightening 3 14 frightened 2 15 surprising 3 16 surprised 2
5 size/shape: large, round, small, square age: ancient, modern, old, young colour: brown, orange, red, yellow material: cotton, metal, plastic, wooden opinion: beautiful, boring, cool, elegant
6 1 cooker, c 2 armchair, d 3 table, b 4 vase, e 5 desk, f 6 lamp, a
Answer key (and tapescript)

7 Lisa
Age: 41
Interests: art and painting, nature and the countryside
Dislikes: spiders

Prescott
Age: 56
Marital status: divorced
Likes: fast food
Dislikes: (being alone), sport

Pam
Age: 28
Concerns: global warming, pollution

Tapescript 
Name: Lisa
Age: 41
I'm good at art and very keen on painting. I love nature and the countryside but I'm frightened of spiders. I need a man to protect me.

Name: Prescott
Age: 56
I'm divorced and bored with being alone. I love fast food and I'm bad at sport but I'm loving and caring.

Name: Pam
Age: 28
Are you annoyed with the world? I'm really worried about global warming and tired of pollution. I want to meet someone with similar beliefs. Let's change the world together!

Unit 91

1) b 2) a 3) f 4c 5) e 6d

2) 1) I'm hoping to run the New York marathon.
2) I've decided to study Economics at university.
3) I'm not planning to work immediately after my degree.
4) She refused to talk to me.
5) We agreed not to tell the police.
6) I don't want to work in an office.

3) 1 to meet at nine
2 to wear her red dress
3 to study medicine
4 to leave early
5 to take a taxi

4) 1 We're planning to go to Greece for our holidays.
2 She's agreed not to tell David.
3 I hope to move house in September.
4 I've agreed to work late on Tuesday.
5 The bank refused to lend me the money.
6 Carrie's decided not to go to university.
7 Would you like to borrow my dictionary?
8 I plan to go on a diet.
9 We invited them but they refused to come.
10 We decided not to go to the cinema.

5) Students' own answers.

Unit 92

1) 1) She doesn't like skiing.
2) He likes sunbathing.
3) We don't like camping.
4) She likes surfing.
5) He doesn't like doing homework.
6) They like eating out.

2) 1) Smoking 2) Swimming 3) Watching 4) Stealing
5) Being 6) Eating 7) Parking 8) Cleaning
9) Learning 10) Skiing

3) 1) learning languages 2) buying a guitar
3) going on a diet 4) getting old 5) flying
6) not phoning

4) 1) I don't mind helping you.
2) Do you enjoy playing sports?
3) Swimming is good exercise.
4) They worry about driving at night.
5) Are you good at skiing?
6) They like playing computer games.
7) Sunbathing is bad for your skin.

5) Students' own answers.

Unit 93

1) 1) living 2) both 3) to move 4) to go 5) applying
6) both 7) to give 8) playing 9) to have 10) both
11) eating 12) to help

2) 1) to sit 2) to drink / drinking 3) trying 4) bringing
Unit 94

1. to eat  2. writing  3. playing  4. smoking  5. to buy eating  6. to have  7. to smoke  8. buying  9. having

2. Stop smoking  2. Stop eating  3. stop driving  4. stop taking  5. Stop to spend  6. Stop watching  7. stop to relax

3. to pick  2. working  3. to watch  4. smoking  5. doing  6. eating  7. watching

Unit 95


2. to call  2. find  3. to have  4. meeting  5. preparing  6. to get  7. to spend

3. 1. a  2. both  3. b  4. both  5. b  6. a  7. both

4. not to go  2. to talk to  3. to photocopy this doing  6. coming  7. to help  8. help  9. fixing agree  11. to be  12. to meet  13. cooking  14. to change  15. to say  16. to take

6. I'd like to /w/ ask for a pay rise. 2. He promised to /w/ answer my call. 3. Do we need to /w/ employ anyone else? 4. Would you like to /w/ order now? 5. When do they want to /w/ interview you?

7. camping  2. eating out  3. sunbathing  4. skiing  5. surfing  6. swimming

8. stop smoking  2. lose, weight  3. break, leg  4. take, exercise  5. have, headache  6. feel, sick  7. get better

9. travel  2. work  3. help children  4. marry  5. have children  6. be happy

Unit 96

1. 1. Tell him to phone me. 2. Ask her to come to my office. 3. Tell them to be here at six. 4. Ask him to send me a copy. 5. Tell them to give you the money. 6. Tell her to come and see me. 7. Ask Michelle to photocopy this. 8. Tell the driver to stop at the station.

2. 1. He, her  2. We, them  3. I, him, us  4. They, me, them  5. She, us, her  6. He, me, them  7. you, me  8. she, him

3. There are a few things I need you to do. First of all, Jack Greer from our New York office is going to visit you in September. He'd like you to book him a room in the Park Plaza for the night of the 27th. Also, he wants you to organise meetings with all the people in your team for him. Secondly, Marta Castro needs you to send her copies of the January reports. Lastly, Paul McCann doesn't answer my emails or answer my phone calls. Can you ask him to call me as soon as possible. Tell him to use my mobile (8796 543 643).

4. 1. I'd like you to photocopy this report. 2. The boss wants Mike to send a copy of the letter to him. 3. Please ask your secretary to book the hotel room now. 4. Tell Jerry to meet us at the café on the corner. 5. I'd like you to bring me another steak.

Unit 97

1. 1. b  2. a  3. f  4. e  5. g  6. c  7. h  8. d
Isn’t it time for a break? Join us on a cruise of the Mediterranean sea to visit some of the most famous sites in the world.

DAY ONE: Fly to Venice to meet the cruise liner The Golden Angel.

DAY TWO: Before we leave you’ll have a few hours to buy souvenirs from one of Italy’s most famous cities. Then at midday, we leave for Athens. In the evening you can sit on the deck to enjoy the sunset and the live entertainment.

DAY THREE: We arrive at the port of Piraeus to take a tour of the city. We’ll walk into town to see the Acropolis and try some wonderful Greek food.

1 She’s cycling to get to school.
2 He’s at the market to buy some fish.
3 He’s waiting to catch a bus.
4 You press this button to take a photograph.
5 They went to the zoo to see the elephant.
6 They flew into space in 1969 to land on the moon.

Students’ own answers.

Unit 98

1 1 are 2 are 3 is 4 are 5 is 6 are
2 1 are grown 2 is picked 3 is taken 4 are dried
3 1 What is this machine used for?
   2 How is this computer switched on?
   3 What is made with flour?
   4 How often are these rooms cleaned?
   5 Where are coffee beans grown?
   6 When is the post delivered?
   7 How is this word pronounced?
   8 How much is known about dinosaurs?

Unit 99

1 1 was discovered 2 grew 3 was eaten 4 arrived
   5 was grown 6 became
2 1 was written 2 wasn’t published 3 was chosen
   4 wrote 5 used 6 were changed 7 said 8 changed
   9 was bought
3 1 was, written 2 was, invented 3 was, paid
   4 were, spoken 5 was, climbed 6 was, discovered
   7 was, flown 8 were, held 9 were, used
   10 was, invented

Unit 100

1 1 wants 2 Tell 3 to 4 need 5 go 6 something
   7 To 8 you
2 1 are burnt 2 is, celebrated 3 is served
   4 was called 5 was born 6 was joined
   7 is spoken
3 Students’ own answers.
4 1 The Eiffel Tower was built in 1889.
   2 Pasta is made with flour and eggs.
   3 How is cotton grown?
   4 A message was left on your desk.
   5 When was the letter sent?
   6 Spanish isn’t spoken by Brazilians.
   7 I am paid £500 a week.
   8 Packages are delivered all over the world.
   9 The weather was bad but our plane wasn’t delayed.

5 1 Tell her to give me a call.
   2 We’re going to the theatre to watch a play.
   3 I need you to copy this report.
   4 Do you want him to send me an email?
   5 They would like to meet us at the station.
   6 How many of these do you want to buy from us?
   7 Is Angie there? Tell her to come and see me straight away.
   8 Water is heated to 100 degrees.
   9 How many different languages are taught in your school?
   10 This building was designed by a famous architect in 1999.
   11 A famous architect designed this city.
   12 No one knows when the wheel was invented.

6 /ɔʊ/ no: grown, told, drove
   /e/ met: read, left, said
   /eɪ/ say: paid, made
   /daɪ/ or: brought, worn, taught
   /ɪ/ it: lit, built

7 1 photocopy 2 send 3 book 4 meet 5 take

8 1 1957 2 Time magazine 3 three weeks 4 his life
   5 $2.4 million
On the Road was written in 1951 but it wasn’t published until 1957. In 2005, it was chosen by Time magazine as one of the best 100 English-language novels of the last century.

Jack Kerouac wrote the book in only three weeks but he used notes and diaries from seven years of travel across the USA. Often the names of real people and places were changed. Many poets, writers and musicians said the book was important to them. Bob Dylan said: 'It changed my life.'

In 2001, the original text was bought for $2.4 million.
-ed adjectives 182–183
education 78–79, 108–109
either 136–137
ever 118–119
everybody 134–135
everyday objects 22–23, 34–35
everyone 134–135
everything 134–135
everywhere 134–135
feels 184–185
first conditional 176–177
food and drink 28–29, 56–57, 156–157
for 116–117
furniture 24–25, 186–187
future 158–159
going to 78–79, 158–159
present continuous 158–159
will 152–153, 158–159
going to
future 78–79, 158–159
and will (for decisions) 156–157
and will (for predictions) 158–159
gone 118–119
had to / didn’t have to 108–109
have 42–43
have got 32–33
have got to 104–105
have to / don’t have to 104–105
Have you ever ...? 118–119
health 198–199
home 24–25, 124–125, 186–187
in a hotel 26–27
housework 114–115
How long? 116–117
if
+ present simple, imperative 174–175
+ present simple, modal verb 178–179
+ present simple, present simple 172–173
+ present simple, will 176–177
illness 32–33, 198–199
imperative 58–59, 174–175
in
preposition of place 22–23, 164–165
preposition of time 162–163
in front of 24–25, 26–27, 164–165
in the corner 24–25, 164–165
in the middle 24–25, 164–165
indefinite article (a/an) 142–143
and the 146–147
+ occupation 14–15
or no article 18–19, 148–149
to-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193
infinite of purpose 204–205
-ing adjectives 182–183
instructions 58–59
intentions 192–193
is 12–13
+ adjective 18–19
Is there ...? 26–27
just 114–115
learning a language 132–133
leisure 46–47, 164–165, 194–195
life events 96–97, 114–115, 116–117
likes and preferences 44–45
location 84–85
looks 184–185
a lot 138–139
many 138–139
months 162–163
most 132–133
much 138–139
music 52–53
must/mustn’t 102–103, 104–105
negative
to be 14–15
didn’t 96–97
doesn’t/don’t 44–45
neither 136–137
never 118–119
next to 22–23, 164–165
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>126-127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not any</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countable and uncountable</td>
<td>28-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-39</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-37</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44-45</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28-29</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126-127</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134-135</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124-125</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114-115</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194-195</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118-119</td>
<td>134-135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pronouns
demonstrative 36–37
object pronouns 44–45
possessive pronouns 38–39
relative pronouns 166–167, 168–169
subject pronouns 44–45

punctuation 232

questions
to be 16–17
did 96–97
do/does 44–45
Have you ever ...? 118–119
object questions 98–99
past simple 96–97, 98–99
short answers 16–17
subject questions 98–99
Wh- questions 48–49
Yes/No 16–17
How long ...? 116–117

relative clauses 168–169
relative pronouns 166–167
to combine sentences 168–169
requests
can 54–55
imperative 58–59
polite 88–89
will 154–155
would like + noun 56–57
in a restaurant 56–57
rooms 24–25, 124–125

's (possessive) 38–39
seasons 162–163
sense verb + adjective 184–185
should/shouldn't 106–107
since 116–117
smells 184–185
so 126–127
some 28–29, 132–133
somebody 134–135
someone 134–135
something 134–135
somewhere 134–135
sounds 184–185
special days 82–83

spelling rules
comparatives 62–63
verbs 42–43, 72–73, 74–75, 92–93
sport 46–47, 164–165, 194–195
state verbs 74–75
stop + to-infinitive 198–199
stop + -ing 198–199
subject pronouns 44–45
subject questions 98–99
suddenly 124–125
superlative adjectives 64–65
tastes 184–185
than 62–63
that 36–37, 166–167, 168–169
the (definite article) 22–23, 144–145
and a/an 146–147
or no article 148–149
+ superlative adjectives 64–65
There is/are ... 24–25
+ some/any 28–29
There was/were 84–85
these 36–37
this 36–37
those 36–37
time
prepositions 162–163
references 76–77, 82–83, 92–93
telling the time 16–17
to-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193
in town 26–27, 58–59
traditions 82–83, 206–207
travel 126–127, 148–149

uncountable nouns 28–29, 138–139
under 22–23, 164–165
unless + present simple, imperative 174–175
used to 128–129

verb phrases 176–177
verbs 42–43, 54–55, 72–73, 74–75, 88–89
+ -ing as noun 194–195
+ -ing or + to-infinitive 196–197, 198–199
+ object + to-infinitive 202–203
+ to-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193
Index

irregular verbs 94–95, 235
offers and requests 54–55, 56–57, 88–89, 154–155
phrasal verbs 174–175, 178–179
regular verbs 92–93
sense verbs 184–185
spelling rules 42–43, 72–73, 74–75, 92–93, 233–234
state verbs 74–75
travel 126–127

was/were 82–83
Wh-questions 48–49
when 124–125, 126–127
  + present simple, present simple 172–173
  + present simple, will 176–177
Where is/are ...? 22–23
which 166–167, 168–169
while 124–125, 126–127
who 166–167, 168–169
whose 38–39
will
  for future 152–153, 158–159
  and going to (for decisions) 156–157
  and going to (for predictions) 158–159
offers 154–155
predictions 152–153, 158–159
promises 154–155
requests 154–155
work 104–105, 202–203
the world 144–145
would like + noun 56–57
Would you like ...? 88–89

Yes/No questions 16–17
yet 114–115

zero conditional 172–173
Photo credits

The publishers would like to thank the following sources for permission to reproduce their copyright protected photographs:

Cover image: Shutterstock Inc.

Illustrations by artists at KJA-artists.com:

Illustrations by Kathrin Jacobsen: pp 20, 22b-f, 23, 24b, 26, 31, 36c-h, 46, 48, 52, 56, 62, 72, 73, 112, 129, 134, 146, 155, 166, 166c, 200; Debbie@KJA-artists.com: pp 97, 140; Kath@KJA-artists.com: pp 14, 22a, 40, 41, 102b, 107g, 111, 113, 114d, 14e, 114f, 114g, 156, 158, 166, 179, 190, 196, 197; Peter@KJA-artists.com: pp 25b, 28tl, 29t, 36a, 36b, 54, 68, 78, 110, 136a, 136b, 152, 198, 199; Sean@KJA-artists.com: pp 19a-e, 24tr, 25c, 25cr, 35, 36m-i, 37g-i, 56, 62, 80, 109, 122, 124, 128, 142, 162, 165, 183, 184, 202, 206

Illustrations by Mark Slader, Echelon Design: pp 7, 11, 39, 49, 58, 64, 70, 177, 82, 86, 87, 92, 104, 106, 107, 108, 122, 124, 133, 138, 144, 145, 152, 162, 174, 178, 180, 182, 184d-h, 186, 188, 192, 199, 206, 208

## CD 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit and Exercise</th>
<th>Track</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4, Ex 2</td>
<td>1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 5, Review, Ex 6</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 5, Review, Ex 10</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 6, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 7, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 8, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 9, Ex 1</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 10, Review, Ex 5</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 10, Review, Ex 9</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11, Ex 5</td>
<td>1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 12, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 13, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 14, Ex 1</td>
<td>1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 15, Review, Ex 6</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 15, Review, Ex 10</td>
<td>1.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 16, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 17, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 17, Ex 5</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 18, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 19, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 20, Review, Ex 7</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 20, Review, Ex 11</td>
<td>1.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 21, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 22, Ex 2</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 23, Ex 1</td>
<td>1.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 23, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 24, Ex 1</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 25, Review, Ex 6</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 25, Review, Ex 9</td>
<td>1.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 27, Ex 2</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 28, Ex 2</td>
<td>1.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 29, Ex 4</td>
<td>1.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 30, Review, Ex 5</td>
<td>1.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 30, Review, Ex 9</td>
<td>1.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 31, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 32, Ex 3</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 33, Ex 1</td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CD 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit and Exercise</th>
<th>Track</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 51, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 52, Ex 5</td>
<td>2.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 53, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 54, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 55, Review, Ex 6</td>
<td>2.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 55, Review, Ex 9</td>
<td>2.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 56, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 57, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 58, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 59, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 60, Review, Ex 5</td>
<td>2.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 60, Review, Ex 8</td>
<td>2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 61, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 62, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 63, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 64, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 65, Review, Ex 7</td>
<td>2.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 65, Review, Ex 9</td>
<td>2.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 66, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 67, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 68, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 69, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 70, Review, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 70, Review, Ex 7</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 71, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 71, Ex 5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 72, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 73, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 74, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 75, Review, Ex 5</td>
<td>2.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 75, Review, Ex 8</td>
<td>2.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 76, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 77, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 78, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 80, Review, Ex 6</td>
<td>2.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 80, Review, Ex 7</td>
<td>2.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 80, Review, Ex 10</td>
<td>2.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 81, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 82, Ex 2</td>
<td>2.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 83, Ex 3</td>
<td>2.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 84, Ex 4</td>
<td>2.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 85, Review, Ex 5</td>
<td>2.43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practical Grammar is a three-level British English Grammar course for self study or use in the classroom. The series takes students through key aspects of English grammar from Elementary to Upper Intermediate levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levels</th>
<th>General descriptors</th>
<th>CEF</th>
<th>Cambridge ESOL exams</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Elementary to Pre-intermediate</td>
<td>A1–A2</td>
<td>KET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Low Intermediate to Intermediate</td>
<td>A2–B1</td>
<td>PET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Intermediate to Upper Intermediate</td>
<td>B1–B2</td>
<td>FCE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Organisation of Practical Grammar**

Each level of Practical Grammar has 100 units, divided into modules of five units. Each module examines a particular area of grammar. The grammar is set in short, everyday conversations or texts, showing the language in natural situations which students will find engaging and can relate to.

Students then examine the form, meaning and use of the language before practising it in a variety of activity types. A Review section concludes each module and regular tests check students’ progress.

Each level comes with two audio CDs and a pin code which allows access to MyPG for extensive additional online practice for use at home or in self-access centres.

**Key features**

- **Real language in natural situations**: exposes students to grammar at work  
  See page 72
- **Listening and pronunciation**: two audio CDs provide listen and check support and key pronunciation of the grammar items  
  See page 91
- **Key vocabulary**: high frequency words and expressions in each unit  
  See page 24
- **Tips**: highlight common errors and characteristics of English Grammar  
  See page 56
- **Regular review and progress tests**: give students the opportunity to check their learning  
  See page 20 for a review  
  See page 230 for a progress test

Each level of Practical Grammar is available in two editions: with or without answers.

- Level 1 with answers  
  ISBN 978-1-4240-1808-6
- Level 1 without answers  
  ISBN 978-1-4240-1677-8
- Level 2 with answers  
- Level 2 without answers  
  ISBN 978-1-4240-1804-8
- Level 3 with answers  
- Level 3 without answers  